VALENTINE AND ORSON.

The Two SONS of THE Emperour of Greece.

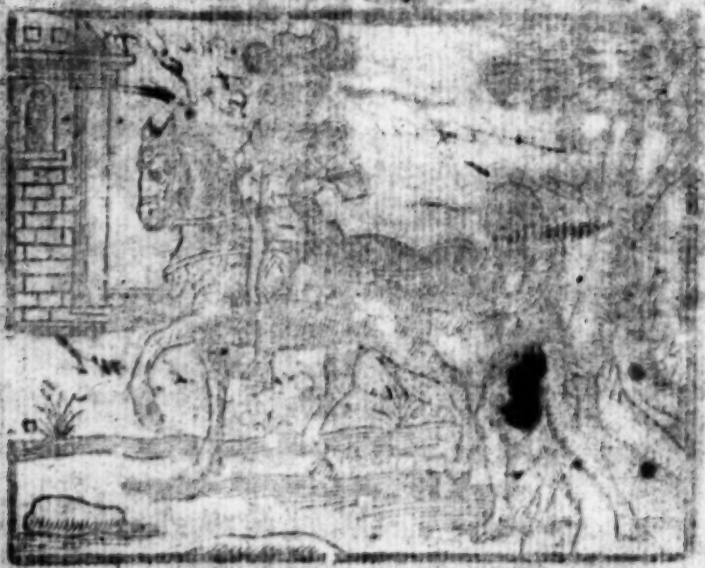
Newly Corrected and Amended, with new Pictures, Lively Expressing the

HISTORY.

London, Printed by *T. M.* for *T. Passinger*, at the Sign of the three Bibles, on the middle of *London-Bridge*, MDCLXXXII.

VALENTINE
AND
ORSON
The Two SONS of
THE
[illegible]

[illegible] Lively
[illegible]
HISTORY



London, Printed by T. H. for T. Passenger, at the Sign of the three Bibles, on the middle of London Bridge, MDCLXXXII.

The Printer *to the* READER.

AMongst many Historyes, as well *Ancient* as *Modern*, which have in Former times borrowed our *English Phraise* to speak withal, this (gentle Reader) here of *Valentine* and *Orson*, Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*, now once again Newly Imprinted, craves a free passage of thy Acceptance, and puts it self to the censure of those Historiographers, which makes *Invention* the Eldest *Daughter* of the *Seaven Sciences*. Therefore considering with my self the Worthiness of the Story, with the Variety thereof, being many years ago First written in *French*, and since Translated into *English*: where it hath found a favourable welcome, as well of Superiours as Inferiours: I have now again to my Cost and Charge, Published it to the Eye and Ear of such, (to be seen or heard) as take plea-

ſure in theſe kind of Writings. It is furniſhed with much ſtate of matter, Elegancy, and Invention, and Decked forth with many fair *Models*, and Lively *Pictures*, all Pertinent and Agreeable to the Subject of the Hiſtory, which I have cauſed to be newly Cut: not only to make it carry the more grace in Reading, but a more Luſtre to *Heroick Atchievements* of *Knightly Adventures*: For here may the *Princely Mind* ſee his *Own Model*: the *Knightly Tilter* his *Martial Atchievements*: and the *Amorous Lady* her *Dulcet Paſſages of Love*: Here are *Countries*, with the *Courts of Kings deciphered*: the *Magnitude of Honours laid open*; and the *True Form of Turnaments deſcribed*: and between *Knight* and *Knight* are here *moſt lively Combats Portrayed*; to the great Content of the Reader. Let no Man therefore think his *Time ill Spent*, or his *Labour Loſt*, where the Matter affords ſuch *Copiouſneſs of Pleaſure*. The *Hiſtory* for the *Strangeneſs*, may well bear the *Title* of Courtly *Contents*, for indeed it is a *Garden* of Courtly *delights*, wherein *Grows Flowers* of an *Extraordinary Savour*, that gives a *Scent* in the boſoms of *Nobility*, *Ladies*, *Knights*, and *Gentlewomen*. It gives alſo a *Working* to the *Minds* of the *Dul-Country-Swains*: and (as it were) leads them to ſearch out for *Martial Atchievements*, befitting many *Paſtimes*. Herein is alſo

ſo Contained the True *difference* betwixt *Art* and *Nature*; for in *VALENTINE* is *Comprehended* the *Education of Art*; and in *ORSON* the *true working of Nature*; for being *Both one Emperours Sons*, the *One* of them *Brought up* in a *Princes* Palace, the *Other* among *Savage Beaſts*; Now makes the *Current* Paſs with more *Admiration* to the *Reader*: *Mark* but the *Carriage* of Wild *Orſon*, and you ſhall find *that Nature hath a being above Art*, but yet *nature bettered by Art, hath a more Noble Working*. The *Hiſtory* here *Written* was *Tranſlated* out of *French* into *Engliſh*, above *a Hundred Years ago*, by one *Henry Watſon*, and ſince that time, it hath been by *him Corrected*, and put into a more *Plyant Stile*, and ſo *followed on to the Preſs*, till this *preſent Edition*, which *I have* (*as you ſee*) here *Publiſhed* for thy Benefit: Therefore (*Gentle Reader*) accept of this my *coſt and pains*, who had rat[illegible] *a Loſer*, then ſo *worthy* a *Story* as this is [illegible] *Obſurity*: for there are few *ſubjects* of *hum*[illegible]*rriage*, but are herein handled, therefore th[illegible]ore fitting to be ſeen into. If you deſire to ſee [illegible] *cares* and *troubles* of *Kings*, here they are: If you deſire to know the *Battels* of *Martial* Champions, here they are: If of *courtly Turnaments* and Combats of *Princes*, here they are: If of the *Travels* of *Knightly adventures*, here they are: If of the

Sorrows

Sorrows of *Diſtreſſed* Ladies, here they are; If of ſtrange *Births*, and ſavage *Educations*, here they are: If of *Friends long loſt*, and of their *Joyful Meeting again*, here they are: If of *Charms* and *Enchantments* here they are: If of the *Reward* of *Traytors* and *Treaſons*, here they are: If of *long Captivities* and *Impriſonments*, here they are: Yea, here are all the *Varieties* and *Paſſages* that may furniſh forth a Hiſtory fit for a Readers pleaſure, for no unſeemly words or ſpeeches are herein contained, but ſuch as are modeſtly carried.

Conſidering all which, I am now encouraged to put this Old Story into a New Livery, and not to ſuffer that to lie Buried, that a little Coſt may keep Alive.

And ſo (Gentle Reader) craving [illegible] acceptance, I wiſh thee as much [illegible] the Reading, as I have had [illegible] the Printing: and ſo I End.

FAREVVE[illegible]

The

THE HISTORY OF Valentine and Orson.

CHAP. I.

How King *Pepin* banished his Queen *Bertha*, and how he gave his Sister *Bellysant* in Marriage to *Alexander*, Emperour of *Constantinople*.

WE find it credibly set down in Antient Chronicles, that the thrice Noble & Valiant Pepin, some time a King of France, took to Wife one Bertha, who was descended of no less then Royal Race: This Lady was exceeding fair and wise, but wondrously cumbred with many adversities and troubles, enviously laid on every side: which with great Patience she always suffered.

The chief Instrument of all this Treachery mischief towards this good Queen, was Plotted and Effected by a False & Curled Old Woman, who first of all brought her in Disgrace with the King her husband, and after to be quite Banished his Bed, while she in a Cunning Manner brought in a Daughter of her own in the good Queen Bertha's stead. This Old Woman having thus brought her Treachery to Effect (for her Daughter somewhat resembled Bertha) it so came to pass, that King Pepin had Two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, Haufrey & Henry,

both which Sons so grieved the King, and so wasted the Country of France by their Outrages and Fury, that in the end they caused the Queen Bertha to be utterly banished, where she passed a great part of her days in sorrowful lamentation, & abundance of sorrow. She long endured those miserable days of sorrow, at the last began to receive comfort again: For it so chanced after, at the earnest suit & request of divers great Peers and Lords of France, this good Queen began to find favour again with K. Pepin her Husband (who when he knew the Treachery that the wicked Old Woman had plotted against her) much bewailed the miseries she had endured, and with great Honour and Triumph received her again most kindly. The Queen being thus restored to her former bed, in short time conceived and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called Charlemain the puissant: But the King himself was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforesaid Haufrey and Henry, & at the last compelled by them to forsake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the ensuing History.

My purpose now at this present is, to set down unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Book: and especially the Valiant Acts and Deeds of Valentine and his Brother Orson.

This K. pepin had a Sister named Bellisant, a Woman of great wit, beauty, & all the endowments that Nature might afford, which caused her brother pepins love mightily to appear to all the world, in the ardent love and affection that he bare towards her. It chanced so, that the fame of this lovely personage spread it self abroad to other Regions, that at last, K. Alexander, Emperor of Constantinople, who was much enflamed with her beauty, came [illegible] accompanied with a gallant troop of his nobility, all [illegible] with all manner of Pomp belonging to so great a Personage.

This Emperor, shortly after his arrival, [illegible] assembled all his Lords in their rich Habiliments, appointing them to take their way towards K. pepins Court, to declare unto him the cause of his coming, which was to enjoy his fair Sister Bellisant in Marriage. The Nobles, according to his command, came unto K. pepin, declaring unto him the cause of their Emperors coming into his Country: which when K. pepin understood, he joyfully entertained them, and quickly granted the Emperors request.

King pepin understanding this sudden (but joyful) News, made great preparations in his Court, for the entertaining of this Noble Emperor: All things being in readiness, K. pepin with all his noble train, went to meet *Alexander* Emperor of Constantinople: whom when they met, they entertained with great joy, & conducted him to the Court of France, where fair Bellisant was, & she entertained him with no less joy, then her Brother K. pepin had done before: and there they spent their time in great joy and triumphing.

This Marriage being once publiquely known among all the Inhabitants, joy began to shew forth it self on every side, for such a happy Day, wherein such good Alliance was made between the Emperor *Alexander*, and pepin King of France: that triumphs began in every place, against the Nuptial Days appearance: When the time appointed came, these two were Espoused in all Honour fitting for their Estates, and largeness shewed it self on

every ſide. This marriage Feaſt endured long, but at laſt being ended, the Emperour (attired with all his Worthy Train) made preparation to take their leave of King Pepin his brother in Law, & take their way towards Conſtantinople, with his fair Empreſs Belliſant. Being thus all mounted on horſe-back, King pepin alſo let forward with his Brother Emperor, to bring him on his way, Royally attended on every ſide, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court: And they that could not find Legs to go, found eyes to weep for the departure of their fair Lady and Miſtris, the new Empreſs of Conſtantinople.

At laſt, [illegible] Mighty Princes came nar unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they muſt needs part; there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more thanks in tears then words, the which I am not able to expreſs: But above all, the Emperor yielded King pepin worthy thanks for his quick, ſudden, and generous conſent, in giving to him his fair Siſter Belliſant, and with ſo frank and free a heart to yield him good will. At which words of the Emperour unto King pepin, the K. preſently embraced him in his arms: ſaying, Fair Sir, and my right Loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your ſtate required, nor with ſuch Triumphs and Magnificence as became me, but in that you have ſo Graciouſly accepted my ſmall power, I hold my ſelf content in that I have done, but not that I ſhould have done: & therefore there belongeth ſmall thanks to me, but from me innumerable, in that you have been pleaſed to accept of my Siſter for your wife; whereby (I truſt) long friendſhip ſhall be continued betwixt us: In token whereof, I take witneſs of all that are here preſent, that my Body, my Realm, my Goods, and all the powers that I can raiſe in France, to adventure for your ſafety and ſuccour all the days of my life.

King pepin being now departed from the Emperor, turned himſelf to his Siſter Belliſant, and in this manner takes his leave: Fair Siſter (quoth he) think no longer of this Country of France, wherein you have ſpent your Infant days, but remember that you are removed to a Country of better conditions. Alſo let your behaviour be ſuch, that I, the reſt of your Friends, and the whole company of all the Peers, may have honour and joy in you.

Again, as the Country where you now do go is ſtrange unto you,

ſo

so be you governed by the modest Ladies of the Land, & give no ear to wicked counsel; or to such as would move you to disloyalty; For you are the creature that I have always dearest loved in all the world; wherefore, if I should hear tydings other then good from you, or of you, it would be the only cause to take away my life. After this he gave unto his Sister many worthy gifts, and so embracing and kissing her, with weeping eyes, he left her to the mercy of the Waves: The young Lady, whose heart being overcharged betwixt joy & fear, was not able to answer a word, and what with tears, and sighs, the passage of her tongue was utterly stope. Then all the Lords & Ladies took their leave each of other, at which was let fall many a brinish [illegible], as well on their parts of France, as they also that were to go for Constantinople, but especially for the departure of the Fair Lady Bellisant.

All Duties of love being ended, K. *Pepin* returned into France, and the Emperor by this time mounted upon the Seas, had wind and water at such will and pleasure, that within short space, he with all his Train arrived with safety at Constantinople: where at their landing they were all received with great Joy, Honor, and Triumph; all which, here were needless to recount. But mark what happned, not long after these joys and triumphs were clean extinguished, that were made for the Lady Bellisant, in place thereof, nothing but mournings, lamentations, and tears were placed, and all for the said poor Lady, which by treason and false accusations, was cast out and banished, as hereafter more at large you shall perceive.

CHAP. II.

How the Arch-priest of *Constantinople* betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Master in making love to fair *Bellisant* the Empress, and what evil followed thereupon.

IN Constantinople Lived an Arch-priest, in whom the Emperor put such Trust, and loved so fervently, that he bestowed upon him great Riches and Possessions, and committed all his Bosome thoughts unto his Secrecy: And in the end made him sole Governour and Commander over all his House; as also, he was the

Emperours

Emperors Principal Counsellor, & one of his greatest Favourites, for the which, he afterwards had many a sorrowful heart.

This Bishop, forgetting all the Emperors favours, and great honors done unto him, being intangled and overcome with the beauty of the new Empress, which excelled all mortal Creatures, inordinate lust prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his way, save only the time & opportunity to settle this his determination. At last it chanced on a day, that he espyed her all alone, sitting solitarily in her Chamber, which this Arch-priest well observing, he came into the chamber likewise, and sat down by her: At last he began to behold her with a smiling and fleting countenance, of all which (the Lady mistrusted nothing) for that she very well remembred his greatness with the Emperor, and his familiarity in the House, and she never so much as once Dreaming or thinking such an evil thought, as that he thereby would colour so filthy an act, as to motion her to dishonour, especially towards the Emperor his Worthy Lord and Master, who so dearly esteemed of him, & so much affected him: But there is never more danger like to ensue, then when one of the same house intendeth Treason. But at the last, after many gestures of impurity, and sitting still by this worthy and vertuous Lady, he began to utter his lascivious thoughts on this manner.

Right dear and Soveraign Lady (quoth he) I am your Servant & Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your eares, but rather let them wide open to hear my rude words; especially, for that I am burnt up in affection towards your fair Person, and for whose love I have suffered intollerable torments in my fiery bosome. Know therefore (my redoubted Lady) that the beauty of your admirable person, and the supernal form wherein you are framed and composed, hath even ravished my spirits, broken my heart, split my whole senses in sunder, and quite perfect me of all evil, both by night and day, and onely with doting upon your peerless Beauty. Again (fair Lady) my meat, drink, manners, yea, and my very countenance; Insomuch, that onely my request, and prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they would so enchant that heart of yours, that you would at length give consent unto me your vassal, that I might not onely serve you, but also delight you in all those pleasures you are ordained unto. If Lady, you refuse me, & call me off, denying these my unreasonable thoughts (than

which

which nothing will sooner cut my heart in sunder) I can look for nothing but present death. and rather cover therein to be locked fast, as in a Prison, than receive a denial from those your fair lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you are renowned in all the gifts of Nature: Fair, Amiable, Courteous, Gentle, and also youthful, be not then the cause that I should determine my life, by losing your love, but rather grant what I desire, and thereby make me for ever yours in hearty affection: But, Lady, happily you will urge, how dare you to offend the Gods in this unlawful act? To this, fair Lady, I answer, I am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon earth, and therefore it wholly rests in my power, to absolve you from your sins, and injoyn your Penance; which trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but very easie, so you grant me love.

These speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto, out of a grave and prudent carriage, made unto this perjur'd Priest, this excellent reprehension and answer. Ah, thou false, unjust, disloyal, and Devilish Priest, stain to all thy profession: How darest thou once open thy perjured mouth to such a mass of villanies, as thereon may ensue? First, as I may say, against the sacred order; Secondly, but most principally, against the Majesty of that Emperor that ever nourished thee in the bond of tender compassion and love, and hath raised thee to great Dignities, far unfit for such a Devil incarnate: And from whom may justly proceed the sentence of condemnation, both on thee and me, if he should but understand thy lascivious and wicked practises. Thou (I say) devil, and worse than devil) thou that shouldest be unto me instruction, and also a guide to my life and conversation, in this thou goest about my utter ruin and destruction, by thy evil conditions, even beyond that good expectation which the Emperor trusteth to be in thee; O never grant (O ye Gods) that the blood of France, from whence I am descended, nor the Emperor my loving Lord, should be so dishonored either by me in my body, or through my frailty in any other manner: O false accursed Man, behold whereunto thou wouldest deliver me: First, unto the utter ruin and spoil of mine honor: next, shut up my body in unremoveable shame for ever amongst men; and lastly bring my soul into the Jaws of death & the devil. Let fall, I say, all these thy vile and devilish provocations to lust, and leave for ever hereafter to solicite me, or any other vertuous creature.

creature on this manner, which if thou further prosecute unto me, then canst thou look for nothing but a shameful downfal, and a most damnable death. Therefore with this answer depart, and see that ye attempt me no more.

This angry farewel of the worthy Empress, stung the Priest at the very heart, but at that time durst make no further reply unto the fair Lady concerning love, but as a man all composed of rage and great fury, he then departed, discontent at this his most unfortunate and unhappy chance. At the last, when he could no longer hold, he excused himself unto the Lady, craving pardon for these his bold, lawcy and rash follies committed, but yet could find no remedy to restore his honor. Thus being sore troubled in mind divers & sundry ways, he resolved what to do upon revenge against this innocent, which he accordingly effected by Treason against the Lady. And seing the Emperor knew nothing in this matter from the Empress Bellisant, how the Arch-Priest would have inticed her to dishonor, and would have drawn her to disloyalty to the Emperor, but he could not, therefore he began to accuse her unto the Emperor for divers crimes, as hereafter more at large followeth to be spoken in the next ensuing Chapter.

CHAP. III.

How the Arch-priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Bellisant*, to save his own Honor practised Treason against the Innocent Lady.

The Arch-Priest having now begun to set abroach his Devilish Practises, began to bethink him how he might effect what he had determined, and also preserve the Reputation of his former honors which the Emperor had bestowed upon him: whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly, under the Cloak of Dissimulation bear fair weather towards the Emperor, as also seemed to shew how great a care he had of his preservation, & to make known his loyalty and watchful care that he ever had towards the welfare of his estate and person. So it befel, that on a day when he espyed a fit opportunity, and taking the Emperor all alone, he began to speak with him on this manner, as followeth. Right

Right High and Mighty Emperor, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount & highly esteem of the many and innumerable Favours, and great kindness which I have always received from your Mighty Highness: Wherefore as Duty doth always bind me, I am ever most watchful over the passages of your estate, in which I now stand by you appointed; But especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all other; Therefore it is my Duty, to bewray unto you all those carrages that any way concern your High and Mighty Person: wherefore I beseech your Highness to give ear to that which I shall now disclose unto you, for I had rather suffer all the torments of death, than for to hide any thing from you: & the rather, for that it nearly toucheth your person, profit, and honor. O Emperor, thus it is, Bellisant your Wife, and Sister to the King of France, she whom you have advanced to this state and dignity, faileth in the Duty and Loyalty which she oweth unto her dread Lord; for she wandreth in her love, giveth that unto another, which is proper only to your self. To name the Person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a sacred Priest, and may not seek the blood of any man: but yet know for certain, that by the way of confession I came unto the light thereof, whereof I neither ought nor will bewray the name of him that thus usurps your Bed: but let it suffice, there is not a more unclean & lascivious woman liveth in your Coure or Kingdom, whereby your life is in danger, your honor defamed, and my duty towards you approved by what I have told you. My advice therefore is, to be wary of your Person, and correct this her folly, but yet mildly & wisely, always with the preservation of your Honour. For will it not be a great shame among the Princes of the Earth, that you, having taken a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her beauty is incomparable, her nobleness and Wisdom is not to be outshined by any earthly Lady, and she to prove a Whore? and what worse is, one who daily desireth your death, which grieves my heart to think upon.

The Emperor having heard this long Accusation, little mistrusted the treachery of this Arch-priest, but gave credit to all his fair, but false Words: and therewithal became extream pensive and sad; that his trust in her beautious Love, had been thus deceived. At last,

having many days in many places uttered forth many discontented gestures, words, and sighs, and many grievous acclamations, even in the Emperial Pallace, he gave rest a while unto his discontented Passions: but wakened revenge to wait upon a fitter opportunity. And upon a day entering into the Chamber of his fair Lady Bellisant, without speaking any word to her at all, in a most fierce, rude, and unmannerly order, took his Lady by the head, and pulling her by the haie, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the Ground in such a horrid manner, that the blood desmear'd all her face in most inhumane sort. The Lady receiving from her Lord such unlooke for welcome, cried out in lamentable manner, and as well as she was able began to say: Alas (my dear Lord) what moveth you to this unwelcome out rage? I call all the Gods to witness, I never did any thing in my life, either against your honour or life, or ever prostituted my body to any Strangers love. The Emperor not being thus satisfied, Replyed, saying: Thou Allhore, I am too well informed of thy proceedings, and curses be the day and hour that ever I saw thy deceiveable Face, and therewithal, without all pitty dashed her head against the ground, leaving her sheerhless, insomuch that all the Damoisels, her attendants, thought she had been quite bereft of life. Upon this there arose up in the Court a most pitiful out-cry, which the Counsellors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance; at which disaster all amazed, some ran to take up the dead Body of the Empress, others took upon them to speak unto the Emperor, thinking thereby to stay the fury of this undeserved rage, whose Words unto him were a followeth.

Alas (dear Soveraign) what may be the cause of this your sudden passion in delivering unto danger of death, this so modest, chaste and noble a Lady? A Lady so beloved of all degrees, and in whom was never seen the least spark of dishonour, neither towards you nor any in this Empire: Wherefore our request unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong conceived anger against this harmless Lady. The Emperor nothing for all this relenting, answered: Speak no more, for I know, I see, I hear, how cunningly she hath deluded me: therefore move me no further, for I am fully purposed to deliver her part to death, and he or they who shall hereunto gain-say, I shall

make

make him partaker in death with this wicked and disloyal Strumpet.

These words were no sooner uttered, but up rose a Noble by, Wise, and Courageous old Barron, & spake unto the Emperor after this manner. Right worthy Sir, I could wish you to be well advised before you proceed further against this Lady, who is your espoused wife, sister to a great King, namely, Pepin K. of France, who when he shall hear of this wrong done to her, will out of a courageous heart, & brotherly affection, muster up all his Men of War, and suddenly surprize all our Towns, houses, Abbies, & Children, staggering Berry, and onely pursuing revenge upon us for these murthers and cruelties unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other side, that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous to rudely to smite and wound her in this manner wherein you have proceeded against her. The worthy Barron having thus ended his advice, the Lady suddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperor, & in tears very sorrowfully and lamentably thus she spake:

Alas (my Lord) take pity on an innocent Lady, for I am so free from any evil act, as I never so much as thought any evil against your person or dignity: at least, my Lord, if your compassion be quite distinct from pitying me, yet pity the fruit of my Body, for I am great with child by you, of which the Gods grant me a joyful delivery. If nothing can appease your anger towards me, then let my body be imprison'd in some strong Tower, till the time of my delivery, & then do with my body what pleaseth you, so the fruit of my body may be kept safe. In this dolorous passion she proceeded so far, that what with her sighs & tears following one the other, it would have grieved the flintiest heart that ever rested in the bosome of the direst Tyrant that ever Reigned.

All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperor, who was so wholly bewitched with the false and Traiterous Accusation of the Arch-Fiend, that all Pity set apart, he burst out in this manner: Thou false Strumpet, the child thou goest withal is to me no joy, but rather great dishonour, for thy Behaviour and thy Disloyalty hath made such a seperation between us, that noting thy dissolute life, thou hast made another partner in my bed: The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the Rage of the Emperor, by a common consent removed her out of his presence into another Chamber, the w-

ſing unto her all the labour they could both in action and geſture, although her fair face was ſore deformed and beſmeared with blood: having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were attendants, ſetched water to waſh her face, and did all they could to Revive her ever-dying ſpirits. Being thus in another chamber, in comes Blandiman her Squire, who beholding her in this diſfigured manner, ſo very grew the water trickled down his cheeks, & at the laſt began his ſpeech in this manner.

Ah Madam, I plainly ſee that you are trayterouſly handled, and with that the Gods would throw down their malignant curſes upon that perſon that hath thus purchaſed your extream miſeries; but gentle Lady, take comfort unto you, & truſt me, if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you back again into France, towards your Brother King Pepin, who gave me and my ſervice unto you, to attend you in all theſe miſfortunes, all which I will to the utmoſt of my power undertake. Sweet Lady, follow my Counſel, and free your ſelf out of danger, for be you aſſured, that if here you ſtay, the Emperor will proſecute Revenge upon you, and in the end bring you unto a ſhameful Death.

Unto this the ſorrowful Lady made this Reply, Ah Blandiman, I know thy faithful ſervice towards me, but yet if I ſhould follow thy advice, and ſteal out of this Country ſecretly, it would argue me guilty of all that infamy the Emperor throweth upon me, and thereby yield me guilty of the deed: Believe me Servant, I had rather dye all the deaths the world can lay upon me, rather than to bear the blame of that wherein I am innocent.

By this time the Emperors Choller was ſomewhat pacified, by means of his Lords and Barrons that attended, inſomuch that he cauſed Belliſant to be quickly brought before him: when ſhe was come his heart trembled and ſhrunk for very anger that he durſt not put her to death, fearing the puiſſance and might of her Brother K. Pepin, and therefore burſt forth into theſe ſpeeches: Thou falſe and accurſed woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in Queſtion: I take the Gods to witneſs, were it not for thy Brothers ſake, the Valiant Pepin King of France, I would make thee fry in the fire, as an Example to all falſe Ladies, but for his ſake I ſpare thy life, ſtand forth and hear thy judgment. I baniſh thee out of my Country & Empire,

pire, expressly Commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou shalt ever be seen here any more, I assure thee thou shalt suffer death in all extremity: Also, I straightly command that none of my Country dare be once so hardy as to give aid, or accompany you, save only your servant Blandiman, whom you brought with you out of France. Go, get thee presently out of my sight, for thou shalt never more sleep in my bosome. The Emperor having pronounced Sentence against her, the Empress Bellisant, accompanied with her servant Blandiman, speedily hasted to horse. Being thus mounted, and then passing through the fair City towards one of the gates thereof, there met her people in great multitudes, of all degrees, much lamenting the loss of so fair a Lady, and so lovely an Empress. When she came to the utmost part, even ready to go out of the gates of the City, there was heard such a lamentable howling of mournful voices, that the like was never heard in the City of Constantinople. When she was out of the walls of the City, and but newly entred into the wide fields, she began to fall into a Womanly fit of bitter weeping, to see how shamefully and dishonourably she was handled, causeless. Again, to think upon her birth and the Imperial Dignity from whence she was fallen, as also to account the misfortune wherein she was like to finish the rest of her days, it drave her at last from tears, to utter her griefs in these words. Alas, in what unhappy hour was I born, to fall from so high estate, to so low an Object of Poverty as I am now in: Woe is me, the unhappiest among Women, now are all my joys turn'd Topsie Turvy, my Laughter is turn'd into weeping, my Songs converted into sighs: Instead of Cloath of Gold, wherewith I was wont to be cloathed, now I am glad of all manner of mean attire, my precious Stones of inestimable value, are all taken from me, and Pearls of Tears stand over all my Garments. O you fields and woods, to you I make my moan, for other company I have none, consider my exile, and help to lewail my misfortune: O would the Gods had pitied my deepness, and made me the poorest among Creatures, then had not fortune given me so foul a fall, at least, my poor Estate would never have grieved me: Wherefore doth the beautious Sun send forth his beams on a wretch so miserable? why doth the Earth bear such a creature, that is composed of calamities? It is not possible for my Tongue to tell out my

hearts

hearts sorrow: O wretched man (whatsoever thou art) that by thy wicked treason hath brought me to this downfal, I may well curse thee with bitterness of heart, for by thee onely am I made thus unfortunate. Ah, my Brother, what shouldest thou do with such a woful wight to thy Sister? It had been better I had never been born, than that I should prove such a stain to thy King's House. As she was thus complaining to her terret heart, the anguish thereof struck her into a swound as she sat on horse-back, & was ready at that instant to have fallen off her horse, e're her servant could alight & recover her; but he used all the speediest means for her recovery: at last she coming unto her self again, he said unto her: Alas Madam, be not so discomforted, neither let despair to sat seize upon you, but trust ye that the Gods will keep and defend you, for they are ready to aid and assist the Innocent. Having thus spoken, he suddenly spyed a fountain, towards the which he and his Lady took their way, and being come near thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her long over-tyred senses. Here at this Spring leave we the Lady and her Squire, and turn we now to the traiterous Arch-Priest who was the cause of all these great heroes and evil practises.

CHAP. IV.

How the Arch-priest put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress *Bellisant*, who was lately Banished.

The Arch-Priest having now wrought the banishment of Fair Bellisant, thought with himself now he should surely accomplish his desire: wherefore in all haste he changed his white Rochet into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto his side a Sword; and being thus accoutred, he suddenly was mounted upon a Milk-white Steed, the fairest that could be had in all *Constantinople*: Being thus mounted, he made after her with all Expedition, inquiring of all he met, which way the Lady Bellisant was taken, who gladly told him which way she lately passed. After some few hours riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was riding forward, casting his eye aside, he presently espied the Lady with her Servant Blandi-

man

man, sitting by a Fountain, full of heaviness, lamenting her miserable fortunes; Blandiman using all the means he could to Comfort her.

This false Priest from forth his Beaver, well perceived it to be the Lady, but by reason of his disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch-Priest, her Enemy: but coming nearer her, she soon discryed him, and being struck with a sudden fear, spake thus to her servant: Alas (quoth she) I well perceive this to be the false Arch-priest, that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, lest he be come to do me further Villany. Lady (quoth Blandiman) banish fear, for if he come after us to do you further harm, I will encounter him body for body, even as long as life lasteth: By this time that they had ended their Speech each to other, the Arch-priest was ready to alight from his horse to salute the Lady in all courteous behaviour; and after he had made himself known unto her, he began to say unto her after this manner:

Right dear Lady, and our late Honoured Empress, sithence thy case is so pitiful, as to suffer Banishment by sentence given against thee by the Emperor; so it is, That if thou wilt give me Entertainment in thy Love, accept me into thy Favour, and to grant what I have long sought at thy hands, I will bring it to pass that the Emperor shall again recal thy Banishment, and make thy greatness of State shine more bright than ever before: Therefore advise you well, for I Protest that I offer to you, is onely tending to your good and Advancement. He! (quoth the Lady) thou Disloyal and Traytorous Adversary, I have no great cause to bestow Love, where my life hath been put in jeopardy. It is onely thou that hast wrought my overthrow, and thou it is, that makest me to spend the remnant of my days in more misery than ever Lady is able to indure. Lady (quoth he) utter not forth such Curses against me, for I am come to you, not to vex or trouble you, but to heap upon you more joys than ever you as yet in all your Life enjoyed: and in speaking these words, he bended his body to the Lady, thinking to have kissed her; but Blandiman perceiving his intent, suddenly started between them, and gave the Arch-priest so mighty a Stroak that he felled him to the Earth, and with the Violence of the blow, brake out one of his Teeth: The Arch-Priest had no

sooner

sooner recovered himself from the ground, but suddenly betook him to his sword, which Blandiman perceiving, betook him to a Glave which he had about him, whereupon grew a sore and dangerous fight between them.

This encounter lasted so long that they were both wounded, but still they continued fighting, till at last it chanced a Merchant came by that way, who perceiving a far off their fierce encounter, cryed out with a loud voice, in this manner: Lords, Lords, (qd. he) leave off, and shew the cause of this your varience, & I shall do my best to end this controversie. Sir, (qd. Blandiman) let us first try our right by our weapons, & afterwards we will be ruled by words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear silence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth. Alas (quoth she) as you ever pitied woman, pitty my case; for this Man whom here you see armed, is the false & Traiterous Arch Priest, that hath followed me to rob me of mine Honour, and force me to his wicked and unsatiable Lust; Also, this is he that hath made a separation between me and the Emperor my Lord and Husband. The Merchant hearing her lamentable tale, pitied her Misery, and began thus unto the Arch-Priest: Sir Priest, leave off your enterprize, & dare not so much as to touch this innocent Lady, for if the Emperor did but understand this villany, he would soon end thy life in infamy, as thou well deservest. As soon as the Arch-priest had heard his speeth, he forsook his combate, & fled as fast as he could through the wood, for feat of being further known, being prevented of his purpose toward the Lady: though he conveyed his body out of sight, yet his villanies were afterwards disclosed. After his Departure the Lady was forced to stay still in the wood all sorrowful, with her wounded servant. The Merchant staid with them some little time, bewailing the hard hap of the Lady, yet comforted her, saying, Alas Lady! I see that this Arch-priest hath falsely betrayed you, and brought you in hatred with the Emperor, but I will promise you, that if I live I will bewray all these treacheries to the Emperor, & bring the Traitor to a shameful death, and so taking leave, I commend you to the Gods, wishing that in these extremities you would be patient, and comfort your self in these your sorrows: so with many thanks for his aid from Blandiman, the Merchant departed.

The Merchant having left them, Blandiman set the Lady upon her horse,

horſe, and himſelf on his, ſo riding on together, they came unto a Lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight days, during which time her ſervant was recover'd of his wounds, and then forward towards France, the Lady ſtill ſorrowful and complaining in this manner: Alas Blandiman, what may my Brother, & the Peers of France think of this, when they ſhall underſtand that I am expelled Greece for ſuch a diſhonourable deed, and as a common Harlot, baniſhed from the Emperor of Conſtantinople? Alas! I am perſuaded that the King my Brother will eaſily entertain it, that I am guilty of the deed, & in his anger care not to deliver me over to death. Lady, (quoth he) be not thus diſcouraged, but truſt in the Gods, who will revenge your injury, and pay it home upon the offenders head. During the time of theſe diſcourſes, they had paſſed many Countries and regions, till at laſt they came into France, and paſſing by Orleance, they took their way towards Paris, where King pepin was accuſtomed to ſojourn. So entring into a Forreſt near unto Orleance, there happed new Miſeries unto this Empreſs, of which more hereafter enſueth.

CHAP. V.

How *Belliſant*, in her Baniſhment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whoſe Names were *Valentine* and *Orſon*, and how ſhe loſt them.

BElliſant (as before you heard) being with Child, was ſuddenly overtaken in the Forreſt. The time of her delivery being come, cauſed her to forſake her Horſe, and begin to complain to her ſervant on this manner. Alas (quoth ſhe) help, help, I ſay, to lay me down ſoftly under yonder great Tree; & when I am laid, make haſte and find me the help of women, whereſoever thou canſt get any, for I can go no further my pains ſo much increaſe in multitudes upon me.

Blandiman her ſervant did as ſhe commanded, & for that he knew not how to find the ſame place again, he ſet a ſpecial mark, that he might the readier come thither again; and ſo betaking him to Horſe, he rode forth ſwiftly to ſeek ſome Woman to help this Diſtreſſed Lady.

He being gone the Lady was left comfortleſs all alone without

succour of any creature, so that at last she was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wilderness to greet. These Children were no sooner come into the World, but a fresh misery, worse then all the rest that she had endured, happened to this Lady, for as she lay upon the earth under the tree, & her two Infants by her, suddenly came to her a huge Bear, most terrible to behold, & took up one of the Infants in her Mouth, and with great pace hasted into the thicket of the Forrest: This strange and unlook for accident, affrighted the distressed Lady to the soul, that she cryed out most lamentably, getting up upon her hands and feet, to hasten after the aforesaid Bear, which was quickly got out of her sight. But alas! it little availed her to make any further pursuit, for she never came unto the sight of the Child, till by miracle

racle it was at length diſcloſed. So long wandred this Lady up and down from place to place, weeping and crying out for her Child, that being ouer-wearied with trauel, ſhe fell into a great ſickneſs, inſomuch that at the laſt ſhe was thereby neare depriued of her life, and immediately fell into a ſwound upon the cold earth, as if ſhe had yielded up the Ghoſt. In this extaſie, leaue we her, and now proceed to the other Child, which ſhe left vnder the Tree.

It hapned the ſame Day that her Brother King Pepin had taken his Journey from Paris (accompanied with diuers great Lords and Barrons) towards Conſtantinople, to viſit his Siſter Belliſant, and ſtriking through Orleance, he made ſuch haſt, that he entred into the ſame Foreſt whereas his baniſhed Siſter was lately deliuered of her two Children, but knowing nothing what had hapned. Now as the King paſſed through this Foreſt, he eſpyed lying vnder a tree alone, the other Son of Belliſant, which when he ſaw, he ſaid vnto his Attendants; My Lords, by the appointment of the Gods, ſee I haue here found a faire incounter, euen a Child. By the Gods (ſaid the Lords) you ſay truth. Why, ſaid the King, take it vp, and it ſhall be brought vp at my charge ſo long as it liueth, and it ſhall want no manner of attendance, but be vſed as it were mine own. For if it liues vntil it comes to Mans eſtate, I will endow it with Lands & Poſſeſſions after the moſt nobleſt manner: and therewithal calling vnto him one of the Squires, gaue him the whole charge thereof, ſaying to him on this manner; Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to Orleance, ſee it baptized, prouide a good Nurſe for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto: the King little ſuſpecting that this child was his Nephew.

The Eſquire as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to Orleance, cauſed it to be baptized, and gaue it his own name, called Valentine. After, he ſought out a Nurſe for the Child, and gaue it great attendance, according to the Kings command. This done, the King proceeded on his iourney toward Conſtantinople, to ſee his louely and beautious Siſter Belliſant, but e're he could paſs through the Foreſt, he chanced to meet with Blandiman, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greateſt Extremity of Child-Birth: Blandiman eſpying the King, knew him, and ſuddenly alighted from his

horle, doing his duty unto him: the King perceiving it to be Blandiman; asked what good news from Constantinople, & above the rest, how doth our Sister Bellisant? Blandiman answered: Most gracious Soveraign, I bring you but little tydings, yet those I bring are bitter and sharp: For (amongst the rest) I must tell you strange News of your loving Sister, and how she fares: wherefore so it is, That by force of Treason, and false suggestion of the Cursed Arch-Priest of Constantinople, your Sister is banished out of the Emperors Court, and Dominions, and but for the great mercy of the Lords of the Emperors Court, and others, she had been publiquely put to death, and burnt to ashes in the sight of all the people.

King Pepin having heard the lamentable Relation of Blandimans report, being exceeding outragious and fierce in anger (and yet sorrowful withal) brake out in speech most bitterly against her, on this manner: Now by the Gods, quoth he, I hold the Emperor no upright Judge, in that he spared the life of my Sister: for I swear, that if I had her here now in my possession, I would not rest, till by death I had made her an example to all false Ladies, while the world endureth: and therewithal commanded all his train of Lords, and others, to stay their journey of going forward, and make their return back again to paris, for the grievous offences of my Sister here stays my journey, and so he departed, without further asking any more questions, but turning his horses head, for sorrow overcame his courage, and at last made him break forth into these words: Ha (quoth he) how many men are deceived in women? Now am I utterly prevented of all my purposes, for my only hope rested in the modesty of my Sister Bellisant, yea, and in her stood all my joys & pleasure: Again, to have had the Emperor *Alexander* still my Brother, & last friend at all assaies, and in all my necessities, was my only hope and joy of heart, and now behold by her I am disappointed, defamed, and shut out into Eternal dishonor. And so in that distrust and melancholy, K. Pepin returned again towards Orleance. When Blandiman perceived the courage of the King to be thus daunted, he durst relate no further news of the Lady Bellisant, but leaving the King took his way towards the Tree, where he lately left her in great pain of Child-birth: being come thither, he sought her every where, but could hear no tydings of her: wherefore being sorrowful, he knew not what way to take.

Being

Being in this extaſie, at laſt he tyed up his horſe to a thorn-Tree, and began again to make a narrower ſearch than before; wherein he was ſo vigilant, that anon he eſpyed her, finding her flat upon the earth, in a manner ſpeechleſs for very griefe of heart that ſhe had loſt her Child, which the Bear had violently borne away from her. Blandiman being glad, that now at laſt he had found her, kindly embraced her, and taking her up in his armes from the cold Earth, ſet her upon her feet, and began thus unto her: Alas (dear Lady and Miſtris) how happened you to ſtray thus far from the place I left you in?

The Lady looking upon him with a ghaſtly countenance, Replyed thus, Ah Blandiman! my dolors and diſtreſſes daily increaſe upon me; for thou wert no ſooner departed to get me the help of ſome woman kind, but I being delivered of two Babes, a ravenous Bear from the Foreſt aſſailed me, and bare away one of them. I, although weak, making [illegible] poor ſhift I was able, followed that Ravenous beaſt, thinking [illegible]rong hand to have recovered again my loſs, but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor wanting my ſtrength, recover back again to the Tree, where I left my other Infant. Lady (qd. he) the other Infant? Why I my ſelf but lately came from the Tree, and I am well aſſured that there lay no Infant there, nor near thereabout. How (quoth the Lady) no Child under the Tree? With theſe words ſhe was ſo inwardly wounded, that ſhe fell down in a ſwound, which Blandiman eſpying, laved her (in what he could) and fell into bitter teares for griefe & ſorrow, to ſee his Lady ſo extreamly plunged, and overwhelmed, and at laſt led her towards the Tree, where ſhe had left the Child, but when ſhe ſaw the other Child alſo gone, think then what dolour of heart the poor Lady endured: in the midſt of all which ſorrows, ſhe thus beſpeak.

Alas (quoth ſhe) can there be in the World a more deſolate wretch? on every ſide compaſſed with griefe, yea, and all inſupportable Sorrows? But alas Emperor, thou art the cauſe, and haſt been the only means even to deliver me over even to death, and that wrongfully, without cauſe on my part, and onely by deteſtable counſel haſt thou bereft me of thy company: but here I call all the Gods to witneſs, that I was never faulty to thee in my body, nor diſobedient unto thee in any point; wherefore once again I am forced to cry out for vengeance upon the offenders head, whoſoever. Firſt, for my Diſgrace;

next

neer, for my banishment, and now lastly for the loss of my two Babes, issued from the Blood Royal of the Emperor of Constantinople: but seeing all these miseries have even tyed themselves upon my very heart. Come death, and finish what sorrows do but prolong. All this while Blandiman was ear-witnesse of all these piteous plaints, insomuch that he grew even weary of her wailing, & in the best manner he could, comforted her dying Spirits, by calling to intreat her, that she would somewhat give over her moans, and be take her self to her feet: whereunto the Lady consent, he accompanied with a woman he had brought with him, came into a Neighbouring Village, whereas they lodged and nourished her, till she had something recovered her strength, and in some measure forgotten the depth of her miseries. Blandiman began to break with his Lady on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my chance in looking you in the woods, to light upon your Brother King Pepin [illegible] demanded of me what tydings? But his brows were bent, & [illegible] anger against you, wherefore Lady, my counsel is, that you make not towards him, for by that countenance I well perceive you shall have but slender welcome: for upon further questions demanded, & answered, so soon as he heard me tell what the Emperor had exiled you, he lightly gave credit that yours was the fault, and therefore he lays all the blame on you: Oh (quoth the Lady) now what I most feared is come to pass, and I well perceive that I am beset with adversaries on every side: well, be it as it may be, the Emperor hath exiled me without cause, what then shall I do; I will never return again to Paris, but take my way into some remote Land, where my body with my faults shall be smothered: for my brothers anger is grown so great, that he could willingly deliver me over to Death, therefore it is better to flye and to save my Life, then fall into the fury of so angry a brother. This doleful speech she delivered in tears, which Blandiman perceiving, said unto her: Lady leave off your tears, for be assured of my faithfull fidelity, and here I offer my self, life, and all to be at your Service, go whither you please. Why then (quoth the Lady) since thou art so resolute, let us resolve upon some strange adventure, and therewithal passed forth to expose themselves to future dangers; where now we shall be forced to leave them with sorrowful hearts, & return again to speak something of the Bear that carried away one of the Children.

Chap.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Bear that bare away one of the *Lady Bellifants* Children.

The Bear (as you habe heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no violence, but bare it unto her Cabe, which was dark and obſcure: In this Cabe the Old Bear had Four young Ones, amongſt whom ſhe laid the Child to be Devoured, but mark the Chance, and you ſhall find it at laſt Miraculous, for all this while the young Bears did da it no harm, but with their Rough Paws ſtroaked it ſoftly: The Old Bear perceiving

they did not devour it, shewed a Bearish kind of favour toward it: insomuch that she kept it and gave it suck among her young ones the space of one whole year. This Child by reason of the nourishment it received from the Bear, became rough all over like a beast, and as he grew in strength, began to range up and down in the woods, and when he met with other beasts would smite them, and got such Mastery over them, that they began to shun the place wherein he came, he was so extream fierce amongst them: and in this beast-like Estate passed he the term of fifteen years, growing up to such strength, that scarce any man or beast in the Forrest durst stir abroad, fearing to fall into his hands, lest he should put them to death, and after eat their flesh, more like unto a ravenous beast, then any humane Creature: His name was called Orson, because a Bear had been his Nurse, & also was grown rough like a Bear.

This Bear-man lived so long in the Forrest, that none (were he never so hardy) durst abide his presence: the renown of this Wild-man grew so great, and spread so far abroad over all the Realm of France, that they of the Country round about chased and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he neither feared Weapons nor Engines, but passed through them all, snapping them in pieces: All this time he abode in the Forrest, you must understand, he neither wore Garment, nor had any kind of speech.

Here we leave the wild-man in the Forrest, and look a little what became of the Lady Bellisant, and her Servant Blandiman; and we shall suddenly find them wandring and travelling through divers Lands and Countries, the Lady ever remembring and bewailing the loss of her two Children, wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in safety. But in the midst of her sorrowful wishes, yet she passed on her weary Journey, sometime by Sea, sometime by Land, till at length she came to a Port in Portugal, on the which did stand an invincible Castle, kept by a Gyant, called Ferragus, so great, & of such puissance, that there was not a House to be found could bear the living Trunk of this great Gyant.

It so happened at this Castle, that every Ship that passed by this Port was to pay tribute to this Gyant, which he himself did daily come aboard to receive. At length he came into the Ship wherein the Lady Bellisant, and her Squire had passed (for she was laden with all

manner

manner of Rich Merchandizes) so casting his eyes about, he espied Bellisant, which he kindly took by the hand, and led her into the Castle to his wife (for he was married to a beautiful Lady.) Blandiman followed his Lady also, fearing the Gyant, but he behaved himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any violence, but presented her to his wife, who received her gladly, and had great joy at the gracious presence of so beautiful a Lady. The Gyant having charged his wife to use her and Blandiman her Squire honourably. During her abode in the Castle she would often shed tears, when she bethought her of the loss of her two Children; which the Lady of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best manner she could, and ever placed her next her own Person, for the joy and pleasure that she ever took in her company. Within this Castle she carried long time, and here we must leave her, and note we will return back again to tell you somewhat of the Emperor of Constantinople, and the false Arch-Priest.

CHAP. VII.

How by the Councel of the Arch-priest, new Customes, and Taxations were raised through the City of *Constantinople*, and how the Treason came to light.

ALexander the Emperor having shamefully expelled Bellisant his Wife, Sister to K. Pepin, divers times repented him of the fact: but by the cursed counsel of the Arch-Priest, unto whose words the Emperor gave such Credit continually, that what he spake was an Oracle in the Ears of the said Emperor: Insomuch as he continually heaped new Honours upon that Traiterous Priest, advancing him even above the highest in the Empire, and whatsoever he Commanded, was effected. At last, having gotten all Power and Authority in his hands, he began to inhance the Customes and Tolls of the City of Constantinople, which exactions of his against all Reason, struck even to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the Residue of these his forced Impositions, (it happened that according to their yearly customes) there was held a great Mart in the City, which falls out about the month of September. Hereunto resorted many people for divers occasions, especially Merchants. The Fair, or Mart-day being come, the Emperor gave the charge thereof unto

this Arch-Priest, who accordingly provided himself, and to the same purpose armed 200 men to guard his own person: being thus accompanied, he took his way into the City, to effect this new Charge which the Emperor had so lately bestowed upon him. It chanced so, that among the rest of them that sold wares, the Merchant was there present (of whom you have heard before) namely, the Merchant that came riding by the way whilst Blandiman (the Distressed Lady Bellisants Esquire) and the traiterous arch-Priest was Fighting: the arch-Priest perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful lest all his villany should now come to light: the Presence of this Merchant much troubled the arch-Priest, insomuch as he wished, (if it were possible) his Death, and would assuredly have effected the same by the Authority that he now had in his hands, but still he feared some great Tumult would arise thereby. Now mark what followed: This Merchant, among the rest, was richly furnished with all rich and costly wares, as Cloth of Gold, Silver, Silk, &c. Whereby he received great Wealth, and took more Money then any the Merchants beside: The Fair being ended, the arch-Priest sent forth his Officers to Demand and Receive his accustomed Duties due upon the sale of their Merchandizes: One Officer came unto this Merchant, and said: Sir, you must pay Ten-pence on every Pound that you have taken, for so it is Ordained by the Great Officer to whom it doth belong.

The Merchant hereat being angry, said, Cursed be that Disloyal arch-Priest, for he is the only cause of these new called exactions upon us: It had been good for all men, if he had long since had his Desert, and with Shame and Infamy had ended his Days: At which reproachful words against the arch-Priest, the Officer took his Staff and smote the Merchant on the Head, that presently the blood gushed out. Then the Merchant seeing the blood about his ears, drew his Sword, and struck so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feet for Dead. Upon this arose a great Rout throughout the Fair, insomuch that the rest of the Officers coming up to help their Fellow, took the Merchant and brought him before the arch-Priest: The arch-Priest glad of this opportunity, would suddenly have put him to death, but the Merchant appealed to Justice, to have his cause tryed by the Law. The arch-Priest fearing the People, sent him away to

the

the Emperor, for nothing could ſatisfie him but his life: But mark, in ſeeking the Life of the Merchant, he purchaſed his own Death, as hereafter follow eth.

The Arch-Priest cauſed the Merchant to be brought into the Emperors Pallace, whereas he in perſon ſat as Judge. The Emperor being ſet, the arch-Priest brought his Advocate to Plead his Cauſe, which was to this effect, That the Merchant had committed Murther, & alſo had ſpoken many opprobious words againſt the ſaid arch-Priest: the Advocate having ended his Accuſation, the Merchant ſuddenly fell on his knees before the Emperor, and ſaid: Mighty and moſt Excellent Prince, out of your Benignity, give me but audience to be heard, before theſe your Nobles here attending, and I ſhall unfold a matter of ſo great importance, that it touches your Perſon even in the highest Degree of Treaſon. Say on, ſaid the Emperor; Mighty Emperor, and my Lords all, I would adviſe you to make faſt the Gates round about this your Pallace, that none depart from this place: The Emperor did as he Requeſted; Then ſaid the Merchant with a loud voice, Lords, Barrons, and Knights, all you that love the Honour of the Emperor, and the Triumphant Reign of his Perſon, attend my words; For the time is come that the treaſon of the Curſed arch-Priest will now be Revealed and come to Light. Then thus great Emperor, this is that curſed Man whom you have ever Nouriſhed, and brought to great Honour, who hath deceived your truſt; for he it is that hath wrought all the Diſcord, betwixt you and your Vertuous Lady, whom you have baniſhed both from your Bed, Court, and Countrey, and by whom you have received more Diſhonour than ever he reaped honour from you; For it had been his part moſt of any to have nouriſhed & advanced your Renown, & to have preſerved your honor, but contrarily he hath made my Dread Lord infamous by theſe his Wicked Projects, and brought upon you great ſcandal among all Nations: for he ſecretly and under-hand made Love to your Empreſs, but ſhe denyed him: the which he perceiving, that there was no likelyhood to accompliſh his Deſire, it drove him into a thouſand Fears, leſt this his Diſloyal act ſhould come to light; and therefore Deviſed to falſifie unto your Ears, her faithfull love unto your Bed: Of all which his Falſe accuſati-

ons, I lay here before you, and all your Lords and Barrons, that he lyeth like a Traytor, & for the more approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the truth of what these eyes of mine were witnesses.

It so happened on a Day (after the Banishment of the Empress Bellisant) as I was riding about my affairs, I chanced to travel through a Wood: at last passing along the way, I found this treacherous Priest transformed out of the habit of his Priest-hood into the shape of a Knight, even armed at all points ready for the Combate with the enemy. Drawing nearer and nearer, I might behold him in fight with another man unarmed, which at last I found to be Blandiman, Squire to the banished Lady, who conducted her in the time of her Exile.

I perceiving they encountred one another so fiercely, began to call unto them, to give over their direful fight; but they little regarded what I said: I did perceive the Lady piteously weeping, and at last said unto me thus: Gentle Merchant, and kind friend, lend me thy aid against this treacherous Arch-priest, that lacketh by force to rob me of mine honor. This is he, and only he, by whom I am banished from my Emperors Bed & Country. Which that I put spurs to my horse, & ran between them to seperate them, which this Arch-priest perceiving, suddenly fled into the Wood, being fully assured that I had knowledge who he was. Noble Emperor, it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but I durst not open my mouth unto you, for fear his greatness would have outweyed my truth, and so have brought my self unto an untimely death.

The Emperor having heard this tale, sighed, and at last fell into tears, in which tears he turned him unto the Arch-priest, relating his disloyalty in this manner: Ah thou false servant (quoth he) have I ever studied to do thee honor, and exalt thee to high dignities, and hast thou requited all my love and trust with disloyalty & treasons? well, I have seen now what I ever mistrusted, thou hast made me of all men most unhappy, but it is not so much thy fault as my own, thy treason hath bewitched me: in an evil hour I gave credit to thy false speaking tongue, and thereby deserve to carry the brand of my own folly.

The Arch-Priest hearing the Emperor thus distempered, began to intreat his Highness not to be so impatient, neither to give credit to this slanderous tale that the Merchant had commenced against him:

for

for (qo. he) he belyeth me, and I am no way guilty of that wherewith he accuseth me: Thou yeest falsly (quoth the Merchant) thou canst not excuse thy self in what I have charged thee withal: and if thou stand still in the denial, I challenge thee by the single Combate, to maintain the truth, and try my quarrel: and hereupon I throw down my Gage, & withal tender my body thereunto, for to make good what I have here spoken: and more than that, e're night shut in, I will deliver thy body to death, or yield my self banquished.

The Emperor seeing the Merchant so resolute, and to stand to the tryal of the Combate, he said: arch-Priest, it is time that either thou quit thy self by answering this challenge, or to yield thy self guilty of what hath been laid to thy charge. The arch-Priest replyed on this manner: Mighty Emperor, I must let you understand, that to answer the Merchants Challenge, or take up Arms, is contrary to my place and calling, for I am a sacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay (qd. the Emperor) in this case no excuse is to be admitted, but you must either fight, or yield your self a Traytor to our Crown & Dignity. At these words the arch-Priest was somewhat troubled in mind, yet at last he was fain to accept the Combate, because the Emperor charged him so deeply: & besides, he could have no excuse admitted. So the Emperor commanded them both to safe keeping, till such time he had sent Letters to King pepin of France: but in conclusion the Traytor had his desert, as hereafter followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Emperor by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King *Pepin*, to see the Combate fought between the Arch-priest and the Merchant.

The day of the Combate being appointed, and the field prepared, tydings came to the Emperor, that King pe[illegible] was come to Rome, to the aid of the Pope against the Infidels. The Emperor hearing thereof, by the grave counsel of the Lords, dispatched Ambassadors thither, with command to bring K. pepin to Constantinople, meaning thereby to make him an eye-witness of these contentions, & of the cause of this combate, which was to prove the arch-Priest a traytor

toꝛ, and alſo to hold the Emperoꝛ excuſed in that he had by his falſe accuſations baniſhed his Empreſs. The Ambaſſadoꝛs thus diſpatched, you muſt imagine, that after long travel, at laſt they came to Romẽ, whereas they found King Pepin, as before was told them: King pepin having heard of their coming, gave them entertainment appertaining to their ſeveral degrees: all which being done, the Ambaſſadours thus ſpake unto King pepin. Great Lord, we preſent theſe Letters from *Alexander* your Brother, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, our Lord and Maſter, of which we intreat a ſpeedy anſwer. King pepin took the Letters graciouſly, and read them: and having throughly conſidered the Contents, with a loud voice, he ſaid: My Lords (by the Gods) here is much matter of tydings, and alſo of as great admiration. The Emperoꝛ *Alexander* greets me well, & ſends me woꝛd that my Siſter Belliſant his betrothed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully Baniſhed, and that by reaſon of a falſe arch-Prieſt unto whom he hath given too much truſt: which Prieſt foꝛ theſe his treaſonable Facts, is accuſed by a Merchant, and foꝛ tryal of the truth of this his accuſation, will put himſelf in ſeopardy of life, by ſingle combate in open field, body to body, with this treacherous Arch-Prieſt. Now it is ſo fallen out, that the Day and place is ready foꝛ the tryal of his fact, whereby I ſhall be fully ſatisfied whether my Siſter hath been guilty of that wherewith ſhe hath been charged, and moſt ſhamefully caſt foꝛth into baniſhment: upon all which I vow by my Cꝛown and Dignity, that if the Emperoꝛ be found to have offered her this indignity, without juſt cauſe, that I will be avenged againſt him in the extreameſt manner that war can thunder foꝛth againſt him. Having ended his ſpeech unto his Loꝛds in Preſence of the Ambaſſadoꝛs, he Commanded with ſpeed that every man ſhould addreſs himſelf to accompany him to Conſtantinople, to behold the manner of this Fight between the Merchant & the arch-Prieſt.

The Day of his departure from Rome being come, he takes his way towards Conſtantinople, where after ſome few days of travel, he ſafely arrived. The Emperoꝛ hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made triumphs to welcome him, foꝛ all were filled with joy at his approach; The Emperoꝛ mounted on hoꝛſe-back, richly accompanied, marched out of the City

to

to meet his Brother King pepin. At last they met; but the Emperor overcome with Sorrow and Tears at the remembrance of Bellisant, could not utter a Word. On the other side, Pepin being fiercely angred at what happened to his Sister, gave no respect unto the Emperors tears, but proudly began to gird him on this manner: Emperor (quoth he) leave off these your lamentations, and shake of these weeds of sorrow that you seem to wear for my Sister Bellisant; for he that hath a Harlot unto his wife, I account him mad to grieve at her misbehaviour, and since my Sister hath proved such a one; let her go and take care of her self, she is not worthy of so much as one tear from such an Eye of Majesty.

Nay, nay, said the Emperor, speak not you evilly against your Sister, for I am now fully perswaded, that she is composed of all vertue and true honesty, and that against all equity, I have banished her out of my Country. Think you so now (quoth K. Pepin) then are you worthy of a double shame, and you do betray unto the world your weakness, and what great foolishness remains in you, when as by the report of one man, and that a Traytor too, your would with such bigor proceed against an Innocent Lady, and so suddenly (like a common Harlot) throw her out into banishment, shime, & dishonor, being of the Blood Royal of France. The Emperor hearing the K to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful, & said unto him in this manner; Alas, my Lord, do not thus follow me with wrath and anger, but rather turn your tongue upon some milder saying, for to that intent have I sent for you, that your own eyes may be a witness of the truth. 'Tis true (qd. King pepin) but it is all too late what now you say, for you have delivered over my Sister into the Worlds infamy, and that more is, even to banishment; and (for ought I know) to death it self, for I know not whether ever I shall behold her face again, or not: Fie, fie, that you being so great a Person, should be so affectionately born away, to give such sudden judgment against an Innocent; I do confess, one may commit a foul and dishonourable act, but repentance is able to make amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renown: For that once lost, whether it be right or wrong, it is neither again possible to be recovered. Again, how little have you

effected of the honour of my Kingly Office, judge you, when first without deliberation, & here without any knowledge given me, you have proceeded to against my Sister? I make it plain against you, that envy towards her and me, was the only cause of these false and unjust wrongs done against us. Whilst these words passed between them, they were now entred Constantinople, where with great joy & gladness they were received of the inhabitants. The Emperor would have had K. Pepin to have lodged with him in his Pallace, but the K. denyed & called his Train to lodge within the City, & he himself also. Then the Emperor called many Gifts & Presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: for K. Pepin thought of nothing but the dishonor done unto his Sister, & that the rather, for the whole City accounting her the Fairest, the most Vertuous, & the Chastest Lady in all the world, and that by injustice and treason she was banished.

CHAP. IX.

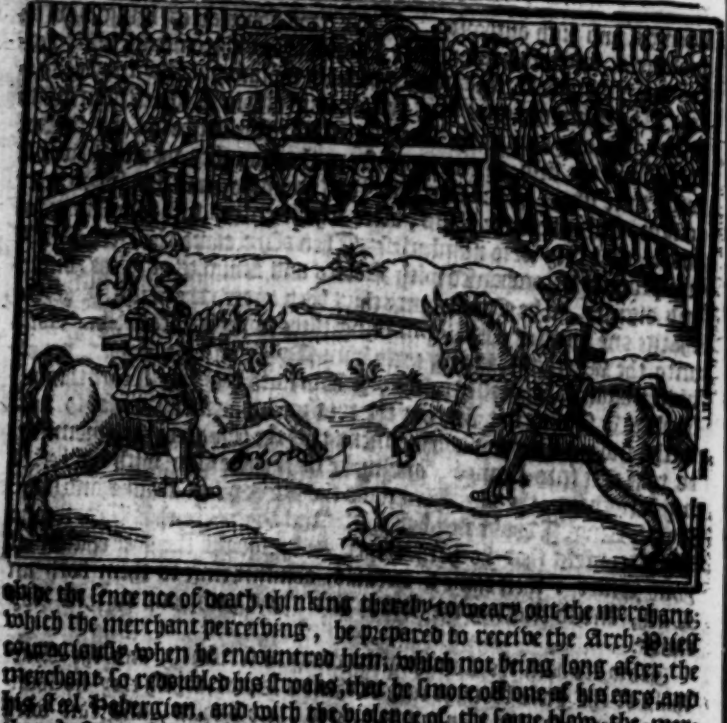
How the Merchant and the High-Priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing the Lady *Bellisant*, and what a glorious Victory did betide the Merchant.

NOw was the day appointed come for the Combat between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant: wherefore every thing was made in readiness, according to the Command of the Emperor. At last there came both the Combatants into the field, and presented themselves before the Emperor. Being both before the Emperor, his Attendants (Knights and others) and the Arch-Priest armed in a most sumptuous Armor of proof, all imbost with Gold and Pearl, which made such a glittering shew, that it even dazled the eyes of the beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-Priest came forth into the Field, and took his place appointed him, at the one end of the List, appointed for that purpose: The Emperor beholding the Glorious shew that the arch-Priest made in his arms, called forth the Merchant, causing him first to kneel down, & in the presence of the assembly, dubbed him Knight. Then commanded he that a most rich armor should be put upon him in the presence of King Pepin, who during the time he was arming, promising unto this Merchant, if he overcame the arch-Priest, to advance him to great livings,

livings, and high authority. Theſe two adverſaries being now in readineſs, and each having their Blazon about their necks, their horſes were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give battel: The Emperor gave ſtrict charge unto all his Officers of arms to have a ſpecial eye unto the Arch-Priеſt, for fear leſt he on the ſudden ſhould flye the field, or run away from them, as they would anſwer it with their lives. The Merchant thus mounted, and his ſword girt to him, firſt entred the Liſts, after whom entred ſuch abundance of people, that they were numberleſs. Then after came the Arch-Priеſt, ſumptuouſly accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great honour and dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the Liſts, ready to charge one another; K. Pepin being there in perſon, called out aloud unto the Merchant, ſaying unto him: My Friend, the Gods give thee victory againſt this falſe traitor; I vow unto thee here before this aſſembly (ſo I may but find out the truth of my Siſter Beliſant) notwithſtanding the great advancement that the Emperor hath promiſed, to take thee into France, and make thee companion with the beſt of my Kingdom; the Merchant gave the King great thanks, and ſaid; Dread King, I doubt not but this Night to make this Trayterous Priеſt confeſs that he hath treacherouſly ſought the Deſtruction of your Siſter: then came a Herauld, adminiſtring to them both an Oath, and ſo clearing the Liſts, left the Champions to their fortunes.

Now are both the Combatants ready to ſet forth, and the Marſhals of the Field brought each of them a Spear, which they no ſooner had received, but they put Spurs to their Horſes, and ran with ſuch violence together, that their Spears were broken to their hands; then they began to ſet forward to another Courſe, charging each other with their Swords, in ſuch violent manner, that with their fury they redounded from their Armor to the Ground, cutting off whole quarters of their Coullers, and like them as a Prey for thoſe that attended the fight.

The Arch-Priеſt ſeeing himſelf ſo ſtiffly matched, gave over the fight till towards the Evening, for ſuch was the cuſtome of the Country, that in any challenged Combate either party might refuſe to follow the Fight ſo eagerly, but that they might have a Breathing-time, ſo the Combatant were yielded vanquiſhed before ſun-ſet, or elſe



ship the sentence of death, thinking thereby to weary out the merchant; which the merchant perceiving, he prepared to receive the Arch-Priest courageously when he encountred him, which not being long after, the merchant so redoubled his strokes, that he smote off one of his ears, and his steel Habergion, and with the violence of the same blow, the merchant's sword fell from his hand; which the Arch-Priest seeing, put spurs to his horse, and charged him with such violence, that he ran against the merchant's horse, and thrust out one of his eyes; the horse feeling himself hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and curvetting so furiously that he unhorsed his rider; and so hard was the fortune of the merchant, that in his fall, his foot hung fast in the stirrop, whereby he was brought in to great danger, the horse hurrying him along the field, that all were very sorrowful to behold this lamentable spectacle, and with the amazement thereof grew desperate in their hopes. King Pepin also was so discouraged at this disasterous chance, that the tears did even trickle down his cheeks, uttering many silent ejaculations against the unkindness of fortune.

Now

Now that which was most miraculous, was, all this time that the Merchant was dragged up and down the field, the Arch-Priest could not inforce his horse to come up unto the Merchant, but drove out too and fro, whereby he could not make a prey upon the Merchant, as he thought to have done. But see, at the last the Merchant's horse foundred and fell down, by which means the Merchant got his Leg from forth the stirrop, and at last got up on his feet like a valiant and hardy Champion: the Arch-Priest perceiving the Merchant had recovered his legs, came running with strong violence upon him, and therewithal gave him 5 or 6 blows upon his head and shoulders, that the poor Merchant was even astonied. At last he was forced to give back to recover breath, and in a very little space, finding himself something relieved, he lustely and fiercely gave a fresh assault upon the Arch-Priest, against whom he struck with such violence, that the sword fell out of his hand, but he had first so wounded the Arch-Priest, that the blood ran through his Armor upon the earth. This so vexed the Arch-Priest, that he grew mad with rage, and turned his horse upon the Merchant, minding to have over-run him with his horse. But the Merchant observing his drift, prepared to receive him, and drawing a long Knife, punch'd it into the belly of the horse, so that the horse being thus wounded, began to fling and leap, insomuch as the Arch-Priest was in danger to be unhorst and striving to save himself, he lost his Shield. The Merchant espying him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the Shield, and threw it away, so that he could no more recover it; that done, he made again towards his horse, and smote him into the belly with his sword, so that both horse and his rider came tumbling on the ground.

The Arch-Priest being thus unhorst, was very nimble to recover himself, but the Merchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a blow, that as he began to rise, he laid him flat again upon the ground, and leaping on him, pull'd off his Helmet, thinking to have smitten off his head. The Arch-Priest seeing himself in such danger, said thus, Alas, my friend, I pray thee take pity on me, and give me leave to confess my self, for I yield my self vanquish'd. The Merchant perceiving he was very courteous, and granted him his desire; the Priest had no sooner got on his feet, but clasping the Merchant in his arms, threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in most sudden outrage, saying thus to the Merchant: I have thee now at advantage, and from thy hands

ſands thou ſhalt not eſcape with life, if what I ſhall command thee thou do not effect. Ha! replyed the Merchant, haſt thou thus betrayed me: Well, it is ſo, that now I ſtand at thy mercy, and that thou mayſt do with me what pleaſeth thee; therefore let me know what it is thou commandeſt, and ſo thou ſave my life, I ſhall gladly do it. Then thus, go with me before the Emperor and King Pepin, and there openly, in the hearing of all men, retiſie that thou falſely haſt accuſed me, and that thereby I may be cleared of thoſe falſe acclamations which by thy means have been brought upon me; all which if thou effectually accompliſh, I ſwear and promiſe thee to ſave thy life; and beſides, be a means unto the Emperor and his Brother, to buy thee Peace and forgiveneſs of this thy foul fact committed both againſt me and them alſo: May more, I ſwear to thee by the Faith of a Gentleman, and by the order of Prieſt-hood, to give thee a Mate of mine in Marriage, who ſhall be to thee rich, fair, and of pleaſant behaviour: and to conclude, thou ſhalt lay more than ever any of thy kindred ever told, thou ſhalt be made more honourable and wealthy: Therefore now adviſe thy ſelf, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable Life, or miſerable in an untimely Death? The Merchant having heard the Arch-Prieſts tale, was upon the ſuddain, exceeding ſorrowful, and not without cauſe, but not knowing on the ſuddain what to reſolve upon, he at length thus anſwered: Sir Prieſt, your arguments are grounded upon good reaſons, therefore I am ready to accompliſh your Deſires, ſo that you will be as mindful of your Oaths and Promiſes. In me, quoth the Arch-prieſt, there ſhall appear no fault. Why then, (quoth the Merchant) let us ſet forwards towards the Emperor, and there will I ſet you free from all thoſe accuſations which heretofore I have exhibited againſt you. It is well, ſaid the Arch-Prieſt, wherefore riſe up then, and let us go together: the Merchant had no ſooner got on his feet, but he began again afreſh to open all the treaſon of the Arch-Prieſt, even to his Teeth, and again he took courage, and now would requite him in the ſame ſawce he had ſerved him before; and ſuddenly he graſping the Arch-Prieſt in his arms, he threw him down, and having him at advantage, he ſaid thus; Arch-Prieſt, ſeeing you have taught me to play my part, and therefore think no more upon confeſſions, for you ſhall confeſs to me or none. The Arch-Prieſt ſeeing himſelf beaten at his own Weapons, began again to entreat, but the

Merchant

Merchant not regarding his words, preſently put out his eyes, and gave him ſo many deadly blows, that he made him ſure enough for riſing to do him any harm: then the Merchant called the Marſhals of the field, and ſaid; Lo, here you may ſee that I have done my beſt endeavour againſt the Arch-Prieſt, and if he be vanquiſhed, ſay ſo, for I am ſure I have brought him to ſuch a paſs, that I may kill him outright if I pleaſe; therefore my Requeſt now unto you is, that you would conduct Alexander, Emperor of Conſtantinople, and King Pepin of France, hither to this place, accompanied with their worthy Lord and Knights, that they may be ear-witneſſes of the Confeſſion which the Arch-Prieſt ſhall make unto them, and alſo to hear in what unjuſt manner he waged combat againſt me.

The Marſhals did according to the requeſt of the Merchant, and then preſently came Alexander the Emperour, with King Pepin, and all the Nobles, even to the place where the Arch-Prieſt lay, all ſorrowful and fully vanquiſhed. Then the Emperor demanded of him the truth of the matter, which the Arch-Prieſt confeſſed, declaring the whole plot of his villanies, and how by his means the Lady Belliſant had been wrongfully baniſhed. When the ſtanders by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of tears were ſhed on every ſide, but eſpecially the Emperor, for his lamentations were ſo violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitterneſs and hearty ſorrow: Now if the Emperor were ſo ſorrowful, what may you think of King Pepin her Brother? Alas, it was not without great cauſe, when they ſaw and knew that by too much truſt given to a treacherous Prieſt, they had loſt the vertuous Lady Belliſant. Between theſe two great Princes there was great joy and great ſorrow; joy to King Pepin, that his Siſter was found innocent and blameleſs; ſorrow to the Emperor, that he ſhould be the onely means (by falſe ſuggeſtions) of his Wives baniſhment.

At laſt, lamentations were laid apart: when they had heard all the confeſſions of the Arch-Prieſts treaſons, the Emperor conſulted with his Counſel that the traitor ſhould be put into a Caldron of hot burning Oyl, quick, and ſo finiſh his miſerable days, as he had traiterouſly ſought the life of that innocent Lady: So the Execution was ſuddenly to be done, and it being done, the aſſembly of people of all ſorts was diſmiſſed.

Afterwards

Afterwards King Pepin withdrew himself towards his lodging, but the Emperor sorrowful for what had happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himself at his feet, began thus to say: Alas, dear Brother, I am all sorrowful for this my error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable crime against you, my Lady your Sister, and the residue of these great Nobles your attendants: Let it suffice, that I behold my own folly: what shall I say? I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my self into your hands, and do to me whatsoever pleaseth you: and for a further satisfaction, I render up into your hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining, for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not Master of my own affections. Take it I say, for I will no longer be served, but during the rest of my life, will become a Servant to thee or any, for no better have I deserved. King Pepin perceiving the Emperor so passionate, and so humble minded, kindly took him from the ground; and before all his Lords, freely forgave him all Trespasses. So that before they parted, there was a general Peace concluded on both parties between them, and a most speedy course taken to send abroad into all parts of the world, to seek out the distressed Lady Bellisant: thus all things settled in order, King Pepin prepared to take his leave of the Emperor, and so returned back again into his own Country.

CHAP. X.

How King *Pepin* returned from *Constantinople* into *France*, and after sailed to *Rome*, to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.

King Pepin having taken his leave of Constantinople, as you have heard, after a long journey, arrived in France, and to Orleance, to refresh his long and tyred Spirits, tolled too and fro in melancholy and heavy Cogitations, for the woful mischance befallen unto his Sister Bellisant. Being thus safely arrived, and seated at Orleance: the King was right joyful that at the last he had attained the place he so much laboured before, by reason that it was one of the goodliest Forests in the Realm of France. Being (as I said) come hither, he caused great Banquets to be made for his welcome home; which was accordingly performed.

In

In the midst of their Feastings and Revellings, the Esquire that had the charge of the Orphan Valentine, took and presented him before the King, saying unto his Majesty on this manner: Dread Soveraign; Lo, here I present before you the poor Orphan that your Majesty found in the Forrest of Oleance, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at mine own Expence, Dread Soveraign, but your own. My Liege, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, because he is growing to Mans Estate; and so may it please your Majesty, it is time to dispose of him as you please: The King having heard the words of the Esquire, called this Orphan (named Valentine) unto him, and took him by the hand, and moved divers questions unto him, all which he answered with much modesty, and great wisdom, and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupboard of Plate should be given unto him. Moreover (said the King) I command that this Orphan Valentine be dearly preserved and kept, for that you shall perceive I respect him above common love, I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished and kept with my Daughter Eglantine, she is both Fair, Ditise, and well endowed with all the richest Gifts of Nature.

The King having given this Command, it was accordingly accomplished, insomuch that they were both under one Government, of one and the same Nurse, and had one and the same Attendants: Yea, every way they joyed one in the Company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of Lamentation till they came together again: but especially the Kings Daughter, who so pondered on the prudent Carriages of the Orphan, that she became in love with him; insomuch that his absence brought her into a thousand fears, and drave her melancholly and disturbed thoughts, into a thousand doubts and jealousies.

Now Valentine was ever practising himself in Feats of Arms, as Horse, Armor, Justs and Turnaments; still exposing himself to all dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the inclination of this Youth, allotted unto him what his heart desired, and furnished him with Armor, Horse, Lands, Revenues, and made him Lord of rich Possessions. Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court

many

many secret mutterings, whereby many people fretted so sore in envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying: That when he was at the best, he was but a found, stray, poor, base, without any known Parents or Friends, of no gentle, nor noble stock, and such like: which when Valentine heard, he could take no other revenge, but sit him down and weep: whose tears fair Eglantine perceiving, would, in a tender Woman-like affection, accompany him, even pouring forth her tears also for company.

At length when he saw tears little prevailed, he began to forsake it, and taking heart, bore himself like a Man, amongst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and gentle frame, that he gained the love of all sorts and degrees, as well Nobles, as Inferiours.

Valentine thus growing up in love of the Court, all this while his Brother Orson runs in the Forest, all rough, and covered with hair, like a Beast, and leading the life of a Beast, where we leave him for a while, and return unto the affairs of King Pepin. It so chanced, that there came into Orleance divers Ambassadors from the Pope, demanding aid against the Sarazens, enemies of the holy Faith, who had lately taken the City of Rome by violence: King Pepin understanding hereof by divers Letters received, addressed himself and his powers, to make resistance against this common Enemy; And amongst the rest of his worthy Followers, he ordained this young Valentine a chief Commander. Fair Eglantine hearing that Valentine should make one, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful, for that she loved him more than any other Creature, and secretly by stealth, sent a Messenger unto him to come and speak with her. And when he came, she sighing, said unto him: Alas Valentine, my love, now I am quite bereft of all my joy, for I perceive you will betake your self to a dangerous War. Gentle Love, leave me not so Desolate, would to the Gods, that I had neither Father nor Friend in the world to contradict my will, then shouldst thou soon perceive how well my affection stands to thy person: For if wishes might avail, I swear (by the Gods) thou art the only man I would join my self unto in the bands of Marriage, and then shouldst thou be the King of France, and I Queen. The young man hearing her vain imaginations,

ons, said, Madam, leave these womanish dotages, you know I am no person fitting your estate, I am but a found stray, that your Father hath called long time to be nourished for charity sake. I am no way either fitting you, or the meanest Damosel attending your person, make your choice else where, & joyn Royal blood unto yours, & so with all duty I take my leave, & commend you to the Gods. Having thus ended his speech, away he goes, leaving the poor Lady all heavy, desolate, and in the midst of mourning.

By this time the King and all his retinue were in a readiness to depart, and taking their way from Orleans towards Rome, they went through a mighty Forrest, and being entred, the King called his Lords and Barons together, and said thus unto them: My Lords, it is not unknown unto you, that in these Woods (as report goeth) there liveth a strange Monster, a Wild man, much feared of Passengers, which spectacle of mans shape, I long to behold, before I determine any further upon our intended Voyage to Rome. The Lords generally consented, and the Chase was suddenly appointed. Being entred the Wood, they chased divers sorts of Wild beasts, and overtane them: but as for Orson the Wild-man, none durst adventure the finding forth of him, save only his Brother Valentine (but he knew nothing) and he followed still the chase, hoping at last both to find and to fight with him also. Every way they beset the Wood, some one way, some another: The King himself venturing so far, that he came before a Cave, dark and obscure, wherein this Wild-man used to hide himself. Orson perceiving the King, rushed out upon him, caught him within his Nails (the which were long and crooked) and in rough and ravenous manner, cast him on the ground. The King thus suddenly surprized by a savage man, never looked for like, but in a piteous manner cryed out for help, who was seconded by a valiant Knight at arms, which espying the King to be almost strangled, suddenly drew his sword to have run the Wild-man through. Orson perceiving the glittering sword, left the King, and ran furiously upon the Knight, took him in his arms, and overthrew him horse and all. The horse to be affrighted, got up again, and in a mad fit ran up and down the Forrest; but as for the Rider, (though a Kt. at Arms) Orson held him so fast with his Twangs and Talons, that at last he pulled him in pieces. In the mean space the King escaped, and meeting part of his Company, re-

lated to them the great danger he had escaped, & the lamentful death of the Knight. These tydings much amazed the rest of the Company: yet being manfully resolved, they joyned themselves together, and marched towards the Cave to meet with Orson, and either to take him alive, or put him to death in the Cave. But being come thither, they found the Knight dead and torn to pieces, but Orson they could not find, for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered only by his Brother *Valentine*: of whose proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the K. perceiving their labor lost, gave over the Chase, and set forward toward Rome. After this the K. ranked his forces into battel-ray, and the great Ensign of France was given to one called Myllon Daugler, a very valiant Prince, and a wise Leader; so that he and his two Brethren, Gervays & Sampson, had the whole command of the Forces that then were marching towards Rome.

When they were come unto Rome, K. pepin desired battel, and would fain understand the state that the City now stood in, under the conquest of the Sarazens, but it was told him he should not be too inquisitive of those affairs; for the Admiral of the Sarazens had surprized the City, and put multitudes to the Sword, and had spoyled and defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples for their Heathenish Idols; and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Priests, Monks, Friers, and all the Ecclesiastical persons, for to serve at their Heathenish Altars, and to sacrifice to their Devils, after the customs of the Heathens. When King pepin understood hereof, he was much enraged, to hear that the Christians were thus captivated by Heathens: wherefore he addressed himself nearer unto the City, and there having assembled all his forces, he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a suddain assault, for his fury was so great against these Heathenish Sarazens, that he vowed revenge upon them: but taking better advise, he reserved himself and his Army for a season. What after befel, shall be discovered at large, when occasion serveth our purpose.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

How King *Pepin* besieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.

KIng Pepin being thus come to Rome, besieged it, & after some few days spent, he called about him his Barrons, Knights, and mighty men of War, and began to speak unto them in this manner: My Lords and followers, you well know that this Heathenish Admiral, Enemy to the Christian Faith, and Church of Rome, hath put many Christians to the Sword, and violently trodden under foot all such as with-stood his power; Therefore it is our Duties to commiserate their Estate that are thus overthrown, and to try the fortune of a Battel against those Heathenish Pagans, and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead Carkasses as a Prey, as many have done before. Wherefore, I King pepin, resting upon this resolution, would fain find out a man to dear unto the Proud Admiral a Letter of defiance in my name. King Pepin having finished his speech, there was none amongst them made him any answer to his request. At length *Valentine* seeing all stand mute, stepped forth before the Emperor, and began to speak on this manner: Mighty Sovereign, so you be pleased to give me leave, I shall undertake the Message, and shall no whit fear to speak both unto the Pagan Admiral, and to the whole Host of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many as they be, and my return shall make proof that I have done my Message both with honour and advantage to your Majesty.

The King hearing *Valentine* thus forward, and of such undoubted and valiant resolution, was right Joyful; and all those of his Princely train greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous spirit. Hereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of defiance, and deliver the same to *Valentine*. *Valentine* prepared himself thereunto, and no sooner had he received the Letters, but he took leave of the King, and all his train, and being bravely mounted, he took his way towards Rome, and so to the Palace where the Admiral lay. So coming thither, he came before the Admiral, and saluted him after this manner: The Gods

preserve the Noble and Puissant King pepin, my Lord and Soveraign; and Mahomet whom thou servest, save and defend thee redoubted Admiral. When Valentine had thus spoken, the Admiral rowzed him from his Chair, and with fierce and frowning brow, replied thus unto him: Messenger return, and get thee gone out of my sight, and say thus unto King pepin, will him either to renounce his faith, and believe on Mahomet, or else let him look to receive no other sentence than death: and so destroy him, together with all his Lands and Kingdom: Get thee gone, and make here no longer abode, go, I say, reply not a word, for my heart is all enraged that so long I suffer thee.

Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty enterprise, thus to enter my Pallace, to deliver any such Message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the height of my Majesty, If that I did assuredly know, that what thou hast done were through pride of heart and insolency, thereby to make a mock at our Majesty, thou should'st never return to K. Pepin, to carry an answer to thy proud Masters Letters. Valentine hearing these hot & furious words sounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid: Wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, he mildly said: High and Mighty Emperor, do not imagine that by pride or presumption I am come before you; for when you shall understand the manner of my coming, you will be astonied thereat. Why then (qd. the Admiral) say on, tell us how thou art come, for I swear by Mahomet, I shall take great pleasure in hearing thee relate thine enterprize. Then said Valentine, Sir, so it is, that I was accused to K. Pepin for a Coward, & that since I came with him to this War, I would secretly have stoln away from the Camp; and returned back again into France: For which (great Admiral) the King had me in great disgrace, & vowed the next morning to smite off my head. I perceiving my self in this danger; fought rather to save my life, than to lose both life & honour, and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court that I would undertake to come to your Court to desie you on King pepins behalf, and therewithal, that I would challenge you to break three Spears with you in single Combate, to try your valiancy, and to win unto my self that lost honour that before I told unto you: wherefore my request is, that your

Great

Earneſtly would grant me my requeſt, other wiſe I dare never return again, leſt the King put me to Death. The Admiral hearing this pitiful, yet cunning tale of Valentine, ſaid unto him: Son I do ſwear by Mahomet, thou ſhalt not be refuſed, but at this inſtant I offer thee the Juſts, go to the and that thoſe French men that lye in ſiege before the City may have a ſight thereof, and for thy valour, I will ordain the place of Juſting to be without the City. Valentine humbly thanked him, and in token of his Acceptance and feigned Love, he fell down and kiſſed the foot of the Admiral. Valentine grew in to great favour in the Admirals court, but yet it often troubled his mind, that he never could underſtand who were his Parents: But while he beſtowed his wandring Thoughts hereabout, the Admiral ſaid thus unto him: Fair Son, me thinks you are very penſive and ſad. This true (quoth he) and not without cauſe, for I am much afraid that I ſhall be ſlain in thoſe Juſts, wherefore my requeſt is, that I may have a Confeſſor to give me abſolution for my ſins: then the Admiral commanded that a Prieſt ſhould be brought unto him. The Prieſt being come, ſaid unto Valentine; Now confeſs you unto me. Valentine getting the Prieſt aſide, and being together, he ſaid thus unto him: Sir, you are a Chriſtian Prieſt, and above all other, you ought moſt to defend the Chriſtian Faith, wherefore hearken to that I ſhall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great ſecreſie. Thus it is, you know that this day I am to fight with the Heathenish Admiral, the greateſt enemy of Chriſtian People: Now I am well aſſured that a great number of the Sarazens will ſtand forth of the City, to be eye-witneſſes of thoſe Juſts, to be held without the Walls of the City. Therefore you ſhall give warning to all Chriſtians to keep within the Walls, arming themſelves in a readineſs, and ſtoutly keep it from the ears of the Pagans: ſo when the Pagans are come forth to behold the Juſts, the Chriſtians ſuddenly ſhall ſurprize the Guards that keeps the Gates, and if any Muting ariſe, let them keep our thoſe that are out. And ſend a Meſſenger to the King Pepin of what is done, that he with his Army may come unto them that are without, while thoſe within are ſet on by the Armed Chriſtians, ſo begirting them on every ſide, that in the end we may make ſuch a ſlaughter of them, that the Chriſtians may receive both their City in Peace, and their former

liberty.

liberty. So having ended his speech the Priest departed. Then the Admiral commanded Valentine to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them charge he should be honourably attended at the board. Being set among many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his named Salatas, commanding him to see Valentine as well armed at all points as himself, and moreover charged his Nephew to deliver unto Valentine the best horse in his Stable. Salatas having received this command from his Uncle the Admiral, took Valentine & led him into a fair Hall: being come thither, he caused to be laid before him divers Armors, willing him to make choice of the best: Valentine cast his eyes upon them all, and at last appointed the Armour wherewith he would be armed, & making himself ready as fast as he could, he approached down into the outer Court, whereas he was attended with his horse, ready to put his foot into the stirrop. Being come down out of the hall, he quickly mounted his horse, the Admiral issuing likewise ready armed out of his privy Wallace. Being thus armed, they took their way towards the Chief Gate of the City of Rome, for on that side K. Pepin had laid his Siege.

When they were both in the field, Valentine hung his Shield about his Neck, in which he wore a Hart waking in a field of silver, and on one side of the Hart a Tree, all which did signifie that he was found in a Forrest, and were the same arms King Pepin bestowed on him. The Champions being entred the Lists, great was the clamour of the French in joy of Valentine; the sound whereof the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued forth out of the City to behold these Triumphant Justs. The Fryer having played his part among the Christians within the City, presently after the Pagans were gone out to behold these Triumphs, addressed themselves to take possession of the Gates, which having gotten, there was no entrance again to be expected. King Pepin being made acquainted with their purpose, prepared all his men of War ready to relieve Valentine, if necessity required. Having now all things in readiness, the hour was at hand that the Justs should begin.

So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they valiantly couched their Spears, & the first course proved so valiant, that their

Spears

Spears ſhivered all in Splinters; each Combatant perceiving valour to vaniſh on the top of his helm, made yet a ſecond courſe, where Valentine got the better; for with his Spear (charged againſt the breaſt of the Admiral), he gave him ſuch a ſtrong blow, that he forced his ſpear quite through his body: inſomuch that he fell from his horſe ſtark dead, making a piteous Noiſe at his departure, wherefore the Pagans ran ſuddenly upon Valentine, and would have killed him. Valentine perceiving their intent, with a reſolute courage put Spurs to his Horſe, & with his Sword drawn, violently rushed through the thickeſt of the Pagans, and ſlew many of them, as he paſſed through them. K. pepin alſo with his Poſt came up to the aid of Valentine, but he was ſo hard beſet by the Pagans, that he was ſmitten from off his horſe, which Valentine eſpying came up to the reſcue of the King, ſo that he horſed him again.

¶ The King perceiving himſelf delivered out of danger, called unto Valentine, and ſaid: My Child, thou haſt ſaved my Life, which I

the

the Gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battle grew so hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City; when they came to the Gates, the Christians that were in the City issued on them, and plated the Ensigns and Standards of King Pepin on the Walls. The Pagans seing King pepins Colours displayed upon the Walls, betook themselves to flight: in chase of them the Christians followed on so fast, that they shamefully ended their days. In this Battel were slain 4 thousand Pagans onely by the means of Valentine, who bare himself so valiantly that day, that he was the Death of many of the Pagans. And thus by his Prowess the City was again restored to the Christians, for which deed there was great Triumph in all Christendom, but especially at Rome: So that all the Inhabitants round about, gave everlasting praise to pepin K. of France, & by the general applause of the people, he was created Emperor, & Crowned by the Pope. King pepin did many godly acts in his time, administring Justice to all. And this happned in the time of Pope Clement the fourth.

CHAP. XII.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King did shew towards *Valentine*.

KIng pepin having expelled the Pagans out of Rome, he took his way back again towards Orleance, & being there arrived, he was right joyfully welcomed by Bertha his Queen, with her little Son Charlemain, and her fair Daughter Eglantine, and their joy appeared so much the more, for that Valentine whom she loved so dearly, was again returned home in safety: Being some few days rested from his weary labours, the Lady sends for Valentine, who accordingly came unto her, and when she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an amorous countenance began thus unto him: Valentine, you above all the rest, are most welcome, & well ought it so to be, for Fame hath blown forth her Trumpet of your Triumphs, and report says, you were the only Champion that drave the Pagans out of Rome. Valentine replyed, Madam, I can hinder no man to speak what pleaseth him; but as for my self, I have done little deserving praise, but it hath pleased the King your

Father

Father to do me great honour, even ſo much, as all the days of my life, I am not able to make the leaſt part of recompence; and as he ſpake theſe words Haufray and Henry, (two men compoſed of all envy) entred the Chamber of Eglantine: and ſeing him, began thus to ſpeak: Valentine, what have you to do here in the Chamber of our Sister? it is no place for ſuch ſtraglers as you are; this your boldneſs is not to be born: no man knows of whom you are, therefore we adviſe you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again, leaſt you dearly buy theſe your preſumptions: Valentine hearing theſe words, anſwered: Wrong me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your Sister, to her diſhonour. What though I be poor, and not know of whence I am, yet I am not ſo baſe as to offer violence unto one deſcended from the blood of Kings; And further, I promiſe and vow never to come neer her Chamber again: and therewithal departed, leaving the Lady very penſive all alone.

Valentine haſted to the Palace, to wait upon the King at dinner, where was in preſence Haufray and Henry, and the Duke Millain Daugler, who likewiſe waited upon the King during Dinner-time. Dinner being finiſhed, the King aroſe and called to Valentine, and in hearing of all his Nobles thus began to ſay: My Lords, here is Valentine, that hath well deſerved at our hands, and that ſaved my life when I was in danger, therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good ſervice towards me, I freely give unto him the Earldom of Cſerimont of Avergne, and when I can beſtow more upon him he ſhall not be forgotten. Valentine gave him many thanks, ſaying, That he had heaped upon him more honors then he could any way deſerve. Haufray and Henry hearing theſe words, grew greatly male-content, & at laſt Henry began to talk with his Brother on this manner: This found fellow I perceive grows in great favour with the King, and there muſt be ſome courſe taken to croſs his deſigns, or elſe our overthrow will ſhortly follow upon it; for (quoth he) you know well that the King hath no Sons but we two, & one little one (named Charlemain) which if our Father dye, may by our furtherance quickly be ſet beſide the Kingdom. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this Valentine will ſupport and uphold him againſt us. Therefore Brother, I think it good to frame ſome Plot againſt him, to bring him in diſpleaſure with the King,

all

and ſo far to proſecute our Revenge againſt him, that if it be poſſible we will not only work his down-fall, but life and all. This being effected, we may at our pleaſure Govern the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his ſpeech Haufray replyed; Let it be as thou haſt ſaid, & that we may entrap his life, this ſhall be our Plot: We will both go to the King, and tell him, that this Upſtart hath Deflowred our Siſter, and that we took him in Bed with her, which, when the King heareth, will ſurely put him to Death. Being thus reſolved, they daily fed their imaginations with the death of Valentine, while he (nothing miſtruſting) ſerved the King daily in all duty, inſomuch that the Kings love daily encreaſeth toward him, and above all other moſt deſired his company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to Orſon his Brother, who all this while lived in the Foreſt, ſo much feared of all men, that none durſt approach nigh the Wood. Daily complaints came unto the King from every ſide, and amongſt the reſt it chanced on a day, that a poor man came unto the King all wounded, ſaying thus unto him: Sir, I am come before you to make complaint againſt a wild-man in the Woods, for one day, as I and my wife paſſed through the Foreſt, carrying bread and other victuals, the wild-man came upon us, took it away, & eat it every bit, & more then that, he violently took my wife from me, & conſtrained her to yield unto his lawleſs luſt. The K. hearing out the poor mans tale, was diſpoſed to make himſelf merry with his ill fortune, & thereupon asked the poor man this queſtion: Whether grieved him moſt, either the taking away of his victuals, or his Wife: By my faith, ſaid the poor man, at the wrong offered to my Wife. Thou haſt rightly ſaid (qd. the King:) therefore I command my Treaſurer to ſee reſtitution made unto thee, for the loſs of thy victuals, but as for thy Wife, thou muſt bare the burden thereof thy ſelf.

After this the King called all his Barrons to aſſemble, and take ſome order to take this Orſon, all which they did, and hereupon a Proclamation was ſent unto all parts of the Realm, that whoſoever he was, that could take this Wild-man alive, or dead, ſhould have a thouſand marks for his reward. Hereupon aſſembled many Worthy Knights to take this task in hand, but the King being one day in his Palace, in the midſt of his Nobles, talking and debating

ting who ſhould be appointed to this buſineſs, Haufray (enemy unto Valentine) being there, ſaid thus unto the King: Sir, here is Valentine, whom you have nouriſhed, and advanced to high dignities and one that hath offered unlawful love to our Sister Eglantine: he was fitted to ſet forward to try his valour, and let him be imployed to fetch in this wild-man, that is ſuch a terror to the Inhabitants: and with his valour he can vanquiſh him, then let him have Eglantine in Marriage, which is his deſired wiſh. The King hearing theſe words of his Son; ſaid, away, for thy ſpeech favoureth of nothing but envy. What though he be poor, of low Birth, & found in a Foreſt, yet I find him to me true and truſty, and of Gentile carriage, and to me ſeemeth to be born of a more Noble Parentage than thou art: leave off theſe thy malicious and bitter ſpeeches againſt him; for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, ſhews that he is deſcended of more Noble Linage, then as yet to us appeareth. And I for my part (for the divers vertues that daily are ſeen in him) am willing that he go to my Daughter when ever he pleaſe, for I am well aſſured, that no diſhonor can be offered out of a branch of ſuch a generous ſpirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of Valentine, was ſore diſpleaſed in heart, but ſetting a good face upon the matter, diſſembles his countenance for that time, but it ſeemed Valentine well obſerved him, & at laſt brake forth into theſe words: Haufray without any cauſe given on my part, ye have ſpoken ill of me, and your will it is, that I ſhould undertake the fight and conqueſt of the wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my days, and ſo your revenge be accompliſhed upon me: Well, be it ſo, here before the King I take a Solemn Oath that I will take the enterpize upon me, and find out the wild-man, and having found him, I will fight him, and either bring him alive or dead, or elſe leave my dead carcaſs as a witneſs in the open field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be ſeen in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot me, as alſo, bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlock, and how I came to be left an infant in the Wood.

The King underſtanding well what danger Valentine had plung'd himſelf into, grew exceeding angry againſt his two Sons,

curſing them, for that they were the cauſe of this dangerous enterpize: for he loved Valentine more then any, and at laſt called unto Valentine, and ſaid: My Child, adviſe you well what you undertake, for to fight with the wild man is deſperation it ſelf, you cannot be ignorant how many valiant men, & worthy Champions, have by him been overcome: and others likewiſe of valiant account that have forſaken this Combat. Therefore I ſay, let not the evil words of a few malitious men make you deſperate in loſing your life. For, my Child, it is far better to indure all the bitter words of envy (which is accounted vertue) then to hazard ones life againſt ſuch a Monſter, and no man.

Valentine replyed, Pardon me (my Leige) for I will never revoke my intended purpoſe: They call me found Beat, which grieveth my very Soul: for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what place, but I reſt determined and ſo take my leave, for to morrow morning will I ſet forward to my intended enterpize. Having taken his leave, marvel not, though the fair Lady Eglantine made great lamentation for what had happened: but the next morning by break of day, ſhe called one of her Maidens, and ſaid: Go unto *Valentine* & bid him come and ſpeak with me before his departure, bid him fear no danger of life, for I would fain take my leave of him. The Damoſel did as the Lady commanded, and when ſhe came to *Valentine*, ſhe found him mounted on horſe back, & ſhe did her Meſſage unto him. He underſtanding her Errand, ſaid unto her, Damoſel, I know the love to be great between my Lady Eglantine and me, yet I would not wiſh her to deſire that would turn to her diſhonour. But envy is of ſo great power, that it never leaves them whom it once poſſeſſeth. For, certain it is, that Hanſray & Henry (Brethren to your Lady) have at me great and malitious hearts, and will purſue me, even unto Death (if it be poſſible) wherefore fair Damoſel, bare her this anſwer, which you heard me tell, and bid her think no evil therof: and further, that ſhe held me in excuſe that I refuſe to come; and ſo farewel.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

How *Valentine* Conquered his Brother *Orſon* in the Forreſt of Orleance.

NOw is Valentine upon his journey to the Forreſt, attended only with his Page: whether being come, he put his Helmet on his head, and ſent him back again. So he rode forth all that day, ſeeking the wild-man, but he could not find him: ſo the Night drawing on, he deſcended from his Horſe, and tyed him up to a tree; having ſo done, he refreſhed his body with ſuch victuals as he had brought with him; and when he had eaten, and the day ſhut in, Valentine for fear betook himſelf to the top of a tree, & there abode all that night. In the morning ſo ſoon as day appeared, he looked round about, & at laſt eſpyed his brother Orſon runing through the Forreſt: At length when he came to the place where Valentine had tyed his horſe, the wild-man much wondring at the Beauty of him, began to claw him with his long Nails, thereby thinking to rouze up the Courage of the Horſe, for he had never ſeen the like. The Horſe feeling the wild-mans nails ſcratching his ſide, began to fling and kick exceedingly. Valentine ſitting on the top of a tree, noted the terrible ſhape of the Wild-man, and began to be afraid, but calling on the Gods, he requeſted their aid againſt this monſter. Orſon all this while was ſtill buſied in beholding the Horſe, and ſtill offered him ſuch injury with his Nails, that the Horſe did nothing but Kick and Bite him. When Orſon perceived the Horſe to be too hard for him, he caught faſt hold on him, and thought to have overthrown him, as though he would have fought with him. Valentine perceiving his Horſe in danger to be ſlain, he cryed out aloud, and ſaid: wild-man, leave my Horſe, and ſtay but till I come down, and with me thou ſhalt have fighting enough. The wild-man hearing a ſtrange voice, looked up into the tree, & eſpying there a man, made unto him divers ſigns with his hands & head to come down, & he would pull him in pieces. *Valentine* making all the haſte he could, drew his ſword and leapt upon the ground cloſe by the wild-man; when Orſon ſaw the Sword, and that he offered to ſmite him therewith, he leaped back, and kept himſelf from the ſtroak, but ſuddenly returned again-

upon

upon Valentine, and threw him unto the ground. Herewithal Valentine was very much discomfited, for he looked for no other than present Death in the place, for he felt the strength of the wild-man so great, that he had no hope of escaping.

Being thus both Grovelling on the Ground, Valentine assaid divers times to have gotten Orson under him, but could not, when he saw that by strength there was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharp pointed knife, and smote Orson deep into one of his sides: that the blood issued out abundantly. Orson feeling himself wounded, all inraged, he gave such a shreech, that the Woods echoed again at the sound thereof, but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted Valentine with his sharp nails, that he got him at such an advantage, that he threw him once more upon the Earth, where lying, they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last, Orson took the Shield from about the neck of Valentine, and having got it, he beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers colours thereon emblazed: when he had looked his fill he cast it against the Ground, and suddenly returned again to Valentine, with the violence of his nails and teeth, he brake in pieces both the the ribs of his Armor, and his Habergeon also, smiting and beating him so sharply with his nails, that he made the blood follow in all places whereon he laid hold. Valentine feeling himself sore wounded, after some Orisons used to the Gods, he made again upon Orson with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him, but Orson recoyling back, step'd unto a tree hard by, the which tree he pulled up by the roots, and made thereof a Club, being thus prepared, he made against Valentine, and striking at him, gave him such a blow, that he made him fall upon one knee; Valentine recovering again, laid about him fiercely, so there began again another dangerous Fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the cause of this their fortunes. Orson was so cruel, and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed Valentine, had it not been for his Sword, for he was sore afraid thereof by reason he had received a wound before by a knife; Long time they fought together, insomuch as they both grew faint. In which fyerceness both standing gaping on each other, Valentine looked wildly upon Orson, and said thus: Wild-man, wherefore dost not thou yield thy self unto me? Here thou likest like a beast,

beaſt, having no knowledge of humane ſociety, come thy way with me, and I ſhall make thee know both thy ſelf & others, I will give unto thee food of all ſorts, and alſo cloath thee in apparel fitting humane ſhape.

Orſon underſtanding by ſigns that he would his good, fell down upon his knees, and ſtretched forth his hands towards his Brother, making unto him ſigns to forgive him, and he would commit himſelf under his command ever after, and with further ſigns promiſed, that during his life, he would aſſiſt him both in body & goods. This happening thus, it was great joy to Valentine in that he had conquered the Wild-man, which ſo many Knights durſt not meddle withal: for by this onely he had won himſelf more honor than any Knight that lived in France in thoſe days. All this hard adventure now knitting up in this manner, he took Orſon by the hand, and ſhewed him by ſigns, that he ſhould go on before him till they were out of the Wood, for he would not truſt him behind, & being out of the wood, Valentine took off one of his Garters, and bound both his hands faſt unto his body, that he ſhould not attempt again to do him any hurt, and in this manner being bound, he mounted on horſe-back, and led the Wild-man with him like a Beaſt, who never reſiſted, which was a thing moſt of all to be wondred at.

CHAP. XIV.

How *Valentine* having conquered *Orſon* the Wild-man, departed from the Forreſt towards *Orleance*, wherein King *Pepin* was reſident.

VAlentine having conquered the Wild-man (as ye have heard) took his way towards Orleance, but you muſt imagine he could not reach thither in one day, wherefore the day being ſpent, he determined to lodge at the next Town or Village: Being come thither, he thought there to take reſt that night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the wild-man to come along with Valentine, every man ran into his houſe, ſhutting up their doors, and for very fear durſt not offer once to look out on him: Valentine perceiving them full of fear, cryed out unto them, ſaying: Open your doors every man, & fear not, for we come onely for lodging, yet for all this, they would not give him ſuccour: At laſt ſeeing neither intreaty nor threatnings would pre-

vail,

hall, he ſwore moſt bitterly that if they would not receive him into their Houſes, to reſt there that night, he would let looſe the wildman amongſt them: ſtill he proceeded to intreat for Lodging, but none would give it him. At laſt, as he had threatned, ſo he did, & letting looſe the wild-man, he made him ſigns how he ſhould runn againſt ſuch a Gate, which was an Inn, the which he did, and wringing a Poſt from out of the earth, he therewithal flung them open with ſuch violence, that they fell off the hooks upon the ground. Valentine ſeeing the Gate opened in this manner, entred the Houſe, and the wild-man with him: But when they within ſaw the Gate broken down, they all forſook the Houſe, and ran out at the back Door, leaving all to Valentine and his Beaſtly Gueſt. Valentine perceiving them all fled, went to the Stable, and ſet up his Horſe, and dreſſed him, and Orſon in the mean time went into the Kitchen, where there was Capons and divers other proviſions of fleſh upon a Spit Roaſting at the Fire. Valentine made ſigns to Orſon, that he ſhould turn the Spit, but ſo ſoon as Orſon underſtood his meaning, he ſet his horny tallons upon the meat, & tore it from the Spit, devouring it as greedily as a ravenous Wolf: when he had torn the Meat in pieces, he eſpyed a Caldron of water ſtanding by, into which he put his head like a Horſe, & drank water unmeaſurably. Valentine perceiving him to be a thirſt, made ſigns unto him, that he ſhould forſake the water, and he would give him Wine, and therewithal took a Pot, & led him into the Seller: when Valentine had drawn the pot full of Wine, he gave it unto Orſon, who ſet it unto his mouth, and taſting the Liquor, found it to be very good, drinking ſo freely thereof, that he drank out all the wine, and afterward threw the Pot againſt the ground, making a ſign unto Valentine to draw him more: Valentine fulfilled his ſigns, and filled him the Pot again, but Orſon eſpying before his ſight a little Bowl-diſh, he put the Wine into it, and carried it into the Stable to Valentines Horſe, but Valentine perceiving that, made ſigns unto him, that his Horſe drank nothing but water, yet Orſon ſhewed again by ſigns, that Wine was a great deal better than Water. Many other accidents happened while they were in the Houſe, which here we will paſs over, for the Night was ſo far ſpent that reſt were fitter for them than Meat. Valentine haſted him to ſupper, making Orſon to beat him Company (after his kind)

kind) but Orſon drank ſo freely of the Wine that *Valentine* gave him, that he became drunk, and in the end got him to the fire, and fell faſt aſleep. *Valentine* ſeeing what had happened, ſaid: Now do I perceive, that there is neither any ſtrength, nor reſiſtance in this wild-man, for if I would I could here ſuddenly end his Days: But in regard he would make a further tryal of him, he puncyed againſt him with his foot ſo hard that it awaked him: being awaked, he made ſigns unto him, that there was People about the houſe: with that Orſon ſuddenly aroſe as in a trance, & catching up a great Log within the chimney, he ran againſt the Gate of the Houſe, that he made all ſhake again: at which ſudden action, *Valentine* fell into a great Laughter, which Orſon perceiving, let all alone, and betook himſelf to his reſt again. Valentine made unto him another ſign, that he ſhould fear nothing, for he would be his Watch-man, but Orſon would not ſleep again, but with the log in his arms. And Valentine did as he before had promiſed unto Orſon, and watched all that Night, fearing the Inhabitants, leſt that they ſhould grow into an uproar, for they were ſo greatly poſſeſſed with fear, that they forſook their houſes, and ran every one unto the Church, and all that night ſo tumbled the Bells backward, that e're the morning came, all the Village was filled with Men of War.

Now the morning being come, Valentine betook him to his horſe, leading Orſon bound (as he did the day before) towards Orleance, and the next day came to the City.

The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the Wild-man, ran every man into his houſe, ſhutting their doors, and getting up into their higher Rooms, gazing out of their Windows. Being entred the City, tydings came to K. Pepin, that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man: the King hearing hereof, was greatly aſtonied, and at laſt ſaid: Valentine, my Child, in a happy hour waſt thou born, bleſſed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the Wood, for now I ſee thou art fortunate, & by thee are we delivered of our fears. Valentine rode through the City of Orleance, till he came at the Pallace Gate of the King, and when the Porters ſaw Orſon; they ſhut the Gates upon them, till Valentine with a loud voice ſaid unto them; Fear not, but go tell the K. that I will ſhield him, and all his Court from the fury of this Wild-man, for I

had made him ſo tame, that he will not hurt any one. The Porters went and told the King what Valentine ſaid, who commanded they ſhould enter the Palace. Then Valentine took Orſon by the hand, & led him into the Court. When Bertha and the fair Eglantine heard that the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for fear. Valentine went up into the great Hall, where King pepin ſat, accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home: Amongſt the reſt ſtood Haufrey and Henry, who alſo made great ſhew of love, but in heart wiſhed the Wild-man had been his death. K. Pepin, and the reſt of his Lords gazed on the Wild-man, inſomuch as the King ſaid, He is made of a proper mold, fair of ſtature, and though now he ſeem rough, yet if he were clothed he would become the ſhape of a right worthy Knight. Then Valentine ſaid, my Liege, it were requiſite he were baptized. It pleaſeth me well (ſaid the K.) let it be done. So the Prieſt was appointed to baptize him: their were

his

his God-Fathers, King pepin and D. Millain: Valentine, and the Dutcheſs of Bourbon; So they called his name Orſon: the Baptiſm being ſolemnized, the King ſat him down to Dinner, and Valentine waited on his Cup: then Orſon was commanded into the Hall to ſee his behaviour; and being come, the King beheld him earneſtly. Orſon ſeing the Meat, took as much as he could graſp in his hand, & devoured it, Having eaten that, he eſpyed one of the Attendants that brought a Peacock to the table, who coming nere unto him, ſnatched away the Peacock, and ſat him down and devoured it moſt greedily. Valentine ſeing his behaviour, made ſigns unto him that he did not well, whereat Orſon ſeemed aſhamed; but the King had ſet him alone, for he much delighted in his rudeneſs. Orſon having devoured much meat, got a pot of Wine and drank it off, throwing the pot to the ground. Night being come, Valentine was appointed to a fair Chamber, and a bed for Orſon in the ſame, but as ſoon as ever he entred the Chamber, he laid him on the ground, and ſo fell aſleep.

CHAP. XV.

How *Haufrey* and *Henry* took Counſel together to Murther *Valentine* in the Chamber of *Eglamine*.

RIght glad and joyful was the fair Lady Eglantine, that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man, inſomuch that ſhe ſent him word to bring the Wild-man into her preſence. Then Valentine took Orſon by the hand, and led him to the Chamber of Eglantine, where were aſſembled divers Ladies of honour to behold him: Orſon being in the Chamber, in a laughing humour leapt upon the bed, there making divers ſigns unto the Ladies, which pleaſed them, but his meaning they could not underſtand, at which they were right ſorry. At laſt Valentine opened unto them his meaning, which was, that he would gladly kiſs and play with ſome of them, whereat they looked one upon another and began to laugh. While this aſſembly of the Ladies chanced in the Chamber of Eglantine, Haufrey came to Henry and ſaid thus unto him: Brother, you ſee how the honour and Credit of this Foundling increaſeth, which much eclipſeth our Honour, and we muſt ſeek ſome remedy for it. It is true (ſaid Henry) wherefore let us lay ſome Plot to rid him out

Then said Henry, hearken what I shall say, Valentine is now with our Sister, and we may have fit occasion to kill him in her Chamber; when we have done, we will inform the King that we found him in her bed. According to their determination, they put it into action, & rushed into the Chamber of Eglantine. As soon as Haufrey was entred, he roughly thus began with Valentine. Disloyal man, now shalt thou know the price of thy inconstancy, purchasing dayly great dishonour unto the King our Father, by abusing our Sister Eglantine, and leading her affections to work your pleasure on her, insomuch as by thee she is made unfortunate. But sith the King hath been told hereof, and he regardeth not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take vengeance of thee in our own persons. And Haufray lift up his fist, and calling him Traitor, smote Valentine on the face, so that the blood ran out of his Mouth. Henry on the other side came to him, & with a Glave thought to have smitten Valentine to the earth. Orson perceiving they were in earnest, leapt out, and gave Haufray such a stroak with his rough hand that he killed him, & after ran to Henry, and girded him so between his arms, that if the Ladies had not been in presence to have appeased his Wrath, he had destroyed them both at once.

This caused an Outcry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barrons of the Court, to know the cause of this sudden clamour, but when they understood that Orson dealt so violently with the Kings Sons, they would have killed him with their Swords. Valentine perceiving their fury to arise, drew his sword, and swore, that if any of them offered violence to Orson, he would run them thorow: this said, he made a sign to Orson to be still, and so he rested himself for that time; Haufray and Henry went to their Father, making unto him great complaint against Valentine and the Wild-man, saying: Father, in an ill hour was this Valentine born, for he hath brought hither the Wild-man, only to work our overthrow; & if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal Person: The King hearing this complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this answer; that as for Orson, he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him; and as for Valentine, the King sent for him to demand the cause of this disorder. Valentine being come before

the

the King, began to ſay on this manner: Dread Soveraign, I was in the Chamber of your Daughter Eglantine, accompanied with divers other Ladies that deſired to ſee Orſon; I know not how, nor why your two ſons Haufray and Henry violently entred the Chamber, charging me that I had abuſed the body of your fair Daughter: Moreover, in the heat of their Violence uſed againſt me, Haufray ſmote me on the face, that the blood iſſued; & Henry lifting up his ſword, thought to have taken away my life: All which when Orſon ſaw, he ſuddenly made towards them, and ſmote them both to the earth, & therewithal began this uproar. The King hearing this tale, ſaid: and is this true that you have ſaid? Upon my life (ſaid *Valentine*) all that I have ſpoken is true. Then ſaid the King, Orſon hath done nothing but right, & that which in duty he ought to do. And as for you Haufray and Henry, I ſee right well that you are even ſwollen full of malice againſt Valentine; wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you attempt no ill againſt him, for here I vow, that I would not loſe him for the beſt Barron in my Land, for I have made many tryals of his love and faithfulneſs towards me: & with this anſwer Haufray & Henry departed, although ſorrowful in heart, that they could not work their wills upon him.

They being gone, Valentine ſtayed ſtill in the K. Hall amongſt the other Nobles that were there aſſembled, and Orſon went here and there round about the Palace, at laſt he came unto the kitchin where the Cooks were making ready ſupper, and being there, he eſpyed two Capons ready for the fire; Orſon made towards the Capons, and ſet upon them, eating them up raw like a hungry Dog: The Cook ſeeing him eat up his Capons, took a Peſtel lying by him, and gave Orſon ſuch a blow, that he made him bow therewith; Orſon feeling the blow, ſtooped down, & took the Cook up between the Leggs, throwing him down upon the Ground, and being down, he ſo belaboured the poor Cook, that he had well nigh beat him to Death. Tydings was brought unto the King, that Orſon had ſlain the Cook, and none durſt come near him.

The King hearing hereof willed him to be brought before him, and made ſigns unto him that he ſhould be hanged: But Orſon ſeeing the Peſtel, and made ſigns how the Cook had Beaten him therewith, wherefore the King commanded that none ſhould offer him

him any injury. So after that, Valentine taught him manners, how he should behave himself; and so they both lived quietly in the Court of King *Pepin*.

CHAP. XVI.

How Duke *Savary* sent unto K. *Pepin* for aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his Will.

IT chanced that not long after the coming home of *Valentine* and Orson into the Court of K. pepin, that Duke Savary sent certain Messengers to K. Pepin, which said to him on this manner: Great King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you, to request your aid against a false and accursed Pagan (called the Green Knight) who hath besieged his Confines, and intendeth to have his Daughter by force of Arms against his Will, notwithstanding all the resistance that he and his three Sons can make against him. The King having heard this Message, made this answer: We agree to give him all the aid we can. He had no sooner given answer unto the Messengers, but there was come unto the Court another Messenger from Lyons, who after his duty done unto the King, said thus unto him: Renowned King, assemble your men of War in readiness, and conduct them towards Lyons, for the Almains are coming against you in great numbers, their whole force consisting of above an hundred thousand fighting men. The King hearing this sudden news, was much troubled in mind; and presently called before him the Arch-Bishop of Rhemes, the Duke Myllon Daugler, Garvas, & Sampson, these with others of his Nobles being assembled, he declared what the Messenger had said, and withal, craved their counsel what was best to be done, whether to go to Aquitain to succour Duke Savary; or to Lyons, to resist the Almains? whereunto Myllon Daugler made this answer: The Duke, I confess, deserveth to be succoured, but yet in two extreams, let us chuse the less: Therefore I judge it most meet, first to defend our own Land, that is now in present danger: and for the Duke, he must be content to take our present affairs for answer: So generally it was concluded to go for Lyons.

Where

With theſe words, the Meſſenger that came from the Duke Savory departed, and carried theſe tydings with him to Aquitain, which made him very ſorrowful to hear it, becauſe the Green Knight had very ſtrongly aſſailed him. Now, here gentle Reader, I let you underſtand, for the better ordering our proceedings, that this Green Knight here ſpoken of, was Brother to Ferragus, the Gyant that kept the Lady Belliſant in his Caſtle, who was the diſtreſſed Mother of theſe two Infants, born in the wood, called Valentine & Orſon, as is before declared. Duke Savary perceiving no hope of aid from K. Pepin, made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions, that all, of what condition ſoever, ſhould be ready arm'd againſt the morrow after, for he would then go out upon the Green Knight, and Fight with him in the Field, all which was accordingly performed. The day appointed being come, both armies met, as well Horſe as Foot; the Pagans preſented themſelves in multitudes, and the Green Kt. behaved himſelf ſo valiantly, that the firſt encounter, with his Battel-Ax at two blows he ſlew two valiant Knights. Duke Savary perceiving him to be ſo warlike a General, came up to encounter him, & meeting, they aſſailed each other; but the Duke was ill-adviſed to adventure his Body againſt the Green Knight, becauſe it was ever peremptorily reported of him, that he ſhould never be overcome of any except he were a Kings Son, & ſuch a one as had never ſucked the breaſts of any woman. But the Green Kt. was herein deceived, for he thought it impoſſible any ſuch man ſhould be upon the face of the earth: but it fell out contrary to his expectation, as you ſhall underſtand. Let us now return to the two valiant leaders, who fought long and fiercely, but the Duke ventured ſo far into the enemies hands, that when he had thought to have retired, he could not; for he was round begirt with ſuch multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken priſoner, and brought back unto the Green Knight, whoſe Ranſome could not be granted for any Gold or Treaſure. His men at Arms perceiving the Duke ſurpriſed, returned to Aquitain, ſore lamenting the loſs of their good Duke. And his three Sons, Garin the Elder, Anſelmane and Garin the younger, made great moan to ſee the hard hap of their Father, led captive among the Pagans.

The Sons having thewed their ſorrows, in comes Fezon his daugh-

ter with

with this lamenting out-cry: Alas, in an ill hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered death in my quarrel; and yet there is one thing more troubleth my distempered soul than all the rest, which is this, that my Father should be held Captive in the hands of his Enemies, the only way to bring his aged years with sorrow to the Grave. Alas (dear Father) your Love to me is the only cause of all these disastrous chances. Thus fell Fezon into a dangerous fit of discontent, insomuch, as with this extremity of sorrow, she had well nigh finished her days, had not the rest of the Ladies attending, laboured to comfort her in this great sorrow, wherewith she was almost overcome.

Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with sorrow, the Green Kt. triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavilion, and having him there, began to revile him in this disdainful manner: Duke, now thou perceivest that thou art my Vassal, and that I have power over thy life; this that I speak thou canst not deny: therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my sacred Lips: either give me thy Daughter Fezon to wife, and so redeem thy life, or else I will have her again thy will, leading her amongst rough Mountains, and there Royally Crown her Queen of those craggy Mansions.

The Duke hearing these proud menaces, began thus to reply: Proud and insolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give consent that thou have my Daughter, except thou also subscribe to be Baptized. The Green Knight hearing him say so, replyed: Urge me no further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet: Wherefore once again I tell thee, except thou yield to my demand, I will first make thee finish thy days miserably, and afterwards consume all Aquitain to ashes, and after that, put to the Sword all that come in my way, Men, Women, and Children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus resolute, began again on this manner: Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy cruelty, for I had rather rely on their power than thine. The Green Knight hearing him say so, began wishly to set his eye upon him, and marking his unwonted lamentations, began a fresh with him on this manner: Grave Duke, leave off these thy sad laments, and hearken unto my relation and resolution also, and that it is: I am not ashamed to let you understand, that thy Daughters Beauty

hath

hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recal my threatned ſentence of death againſt thee; but of which captivate affections towards thy Daughter, I am forced to yield to this condition, that thou ſhalt find out a Knight within the ſpace of ſix months, to encounter me; and if ſo it happen, that by ſtrength of arms he conquer me, I vow by all the Heavens, to ſend thee back again into thy own Country, without waſting any of the ſame: But if it happen that I prove Conqueror over that Knight, then ſhalt thou willingly reſign thy fair Daughter into my hands, to be my lawful wife. Theſe Articles being produced, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto, ſo the Truce was accordingly proclaimed.

Theſe Agreements thus concluded, the Green Knight gave leave that Duke Savary ſhould depart, upon Conditions, that he ſhould ſwear to keep Covenants, not only for the preſent, but during his life. The Duke being thus delivered, made his repair to Aquitain, whether being come, he cauſed open proclamation to be made of thoſe conditions, whereunto he had before ſubſcribed concerning his ſaid Daughter; and withal, the Truce taken for the ſpace of ſix months. His Counſellors hearing what was paſt, adviſed him to diſpatch Meſſengers into all Lands, with theſe advertiſements following: If there were any Knight whatſoever, that durſt encounter the Green Knight, for the love of the beauteous Lady Fezon, he ſhould lay down his gage and ſo be anſwered. Theſe Letters were ſent into ſundrie Chriſtian Lands; what followed, you may better learn by the ſucceeding Chapter.

CHAP. XVII.

How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitain*, at a ſolemn Juſt there holden, to bear away the Love of the beautious Lady *Fezon*.

DUring this time of the Truce, between Duke Savary and the Green Knight, Pepin King of France, had taken his journey againſt his Enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mighty Hoſt of men, being come before the City with all his Forces, he ſet upon a King called Lampatris, who had alſo brought into the Field 10000 fighting men. This Lampatris was King of Syres, Holland, and Frizeland, with the Country of Monemarch, in the which ſtood a very

strong defenced City, whereunto they withdrew themselves. King Pepin getting knowledge hereof, strongly begirt this City with a siege, insomuch that at last they were constrained to yield, or suffer famishment; but resolving upon the safety of their lives, they yielded their City, which City the King bestowed upon Guy, Marshal of France. The wars being ended, Pepin returned again into France, with all his warlike Souldiers. Being arrived at Paris, it was told him that Duke Savary had taken truce with the Green Knight, and the manner how; whereat the King laughing heartily, said in the presence of his Barrons: Who is he amongst you that would win fair Fezon for his love, must take upon him a Combat against the Green Knight, whom if he conquer and overcome, the Duke will not only give him his Daughter, but one half of his Possessions: & that this is true, behold Letters written with his own hand. Every one of these worthy Knights right diligently viewed these letters, yet none of them durst undertake the enterprize, save only *Valentine*, who perceiving them all refuse it, said thus unto the King: Right dear Sovereign, if it please you to give me leave, I will adventure my strength upon that Green Knight, & will gladly undertake the task committed. Again, I have a great desire to leave France, for I long to take in hand some tedious journey, to find out the mother that bore me, and from whence I am descended. Valentine (said the King) take thou no care of whence thou art, for it resteth in my power to make thee greater than any man within my Court, & for that I find thee willing to go to Aquitain, I freely give thee leave, but on condition, that after thou hast tryed thy Manhood with the Green knight, thou return again, if thou escape with life: Valentine yielded to the King in his demand, and so taking leave, he shortly after prepared to his Journey.

When Eglantine heard that Valentine would go to Aquitain, she was very sorrowful, and at last in the midst of tears, sent for Valentine to come unto her. Valentine promised the messenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed; and being come, she burst forth in tears, saying: Ah Valentine, now I do well perceive that all my joys are at an end, and that you are resolved to leave this Country of France. Ah! would to God it might be my good hap to go with you, for there is not a man living, whom I hold so dear as you, & (were not

not I curbed by my high birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou mayeſt the better perceive my true intent, take thou here the keys of all my treaſure, & take what pleaſeth thee, for there is great ſtore; and the Gods give thée ſuccour, in all thy knightly enterpriſes.

Lady (quoth he) Silver and Gold I need none, but that which moſt of all diſtempereth my unquiet Breaſt, is, That I cannot learn of my deſcent. Moreover, one thing more troubleth me as much as the other, which is, That I bear upon one of my ſhoulders a Croſs, & it is of the colour of moſt pure Gold, of which Sign I know not what to gather, but reſolve thus, never to reſt in any place, until ſuch time as I have found out the truth of my Nativity: and ſo lovely Lady, I take my leave, earneſtly requeſting you to ſtop the current of theſe Briniſh tears; and withal, I vow, That if I find my Birth anſwerable to the Majeſty from whence you are deſcended, to take you as my only choice to Wife, forſaking all other. On the other ſide, having found out my birth; and perceiving it not anſwerable to yours, I would not be your Husband for all the wealth in the world: For malicious tongues in time to come will ſay, where are the Brethren, Siſters, or Cozens of this runagade, that hath preſumed to match himſelf unto the Daughter of our mighty King Pepin: having ſpoken all theſe words, he departed, leaving Eglantine full of grief. But when ſhe had ſome little time ſat ſtill, ſhe could not be ſatisfied, but offered to follow him whitherſoever he went; and in concluſion, brought him ſome part of his way, being accompanied with divers of the Nobility. Valentine being departed, Haufrey & Henry were right glad hereof, privily conſpiring how to bring it to paſs, that Valentine & his Brother Orſon (who went along with him) might by treacherous villany come unto an untimely death.

CHAP. XVIII.

How *Haufrey* and *Henry*, accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in ambuſh to take away the Life of *Valentine*.

VAlentine and Orſon having taken their leave of K. Pepin, addreſſed themſelves for Aquitain. Being on their way Haufray and Henry conſulted together (joyning to their Aid a third

who was Cozen to them both) how they might lye in Ambush to set upon Valentine & Orson, to work their destruction: which number was about thirty strong able men. This Plot being thus come to perfection, charge was given to these Warlike men, that if they could not overcome Valentine and his Brother Orson to death, yet they should lay hold on Valentine, and keep him safe. The place appointed where this should be done, was a very large & great Forrest, through which Valentine must needs pass. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, it so chanced that Valentine came riding along the Forrest with Orson running by his side, swifter than a Roze, who coming near the place where these armed men lay, forth steps their Captain (called Gryger) accompanied with all his troop, with their weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized Valentine on the sudden, and to have put him to death: Now this fierce Traytor lent him such a mor-

tal blow, that his Sword pierced quite through his Armour, & entred into the flesh, insomuch as the blood followed the blow; and with that, uttered

uttered forth these unwelcome words: Valentine, either yield thy self captive, or receive thy Death. Valentine, as a man all amazed, was somewhat moved at the sight of his own blood, & considering how he was encompassed with a multitude of his enemies recommending his innocency unto the Gods, at last spoke on this manner: my Lord (speaking to Haufray & Henry) I see well that you have determined my days by Treason, and without cause on my part given, but yet I assure you, that before I yield my self into your hands, or before this days Sun be set, I shall send some of you here present into such a Country, that you shall scarcely ever return again to bring tydings of your Valour. And therewithal drew forth his Sword, and gave the first that encountred him such a blow upon the head, that he clave it then to the Earth, and there he lay dead: After that he bent him towards the rest, with such violence, that at every stroak one fell before him.

Orson perceiving his Brother thus to lay about him, began to rouze himself, and with his rough hands & piercing tallons, he rent & tore all that came in his way, & so bit them with his teeth that they fell grovelling unto the ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his feet. Valentine seeing his Brother Orson thus deale himself, held up his bloody Sword, defending himself, and offending his enemies so valiantly, that they all forsook them, and durst not stay within their sight: Grygar their Captain, perceiving all his men thus pitifully killed & overcome, cryed out with a loud voice on this manner. Valentine, yet I wish thee yield, or else look for nothing but death. Valentine hearing these insulting words, made towards Grygar, and in a fierce and furious manner assailed him; but being too forward, he plunged himself into the throng, that he was enclosed round about, keeping off Orson with their long speares. Being thus begirt with enemies, he still behaving himself so valiantly that none durst lay hands upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was overcome with multitudes, and being not able any longer to wield his Sword, they took him, bound him, and carryed him away with strong hands. Orson perceiving his Brother thus posted away, ran after, making a hideous noise, but he could not overtake them, for they rid away swifter than he could run, and having at last lost the sight of them,

knew

knew not which way he were best to take after. Grygar the Captain commanded them to follow after Orson, & to bring him back, either alive or dead; but in vain they followed, for he out-run them, and so escaped. Those that had the charge of Valentine, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of a Forrest, kept by a notable Thief, who was Cousin German to Grygar; Valentine being entred the Castle Gate, they entreated him evilly, and conveyed him to a deep Dungeon, which grieved him to the heart, insomuch that in his grief, he burst out into these speeches: Alas, now is that come upon me which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadliest enemies, and those that have ever sought my life and utter destruction. Farewel Noble K. Pepin, for I fear I shall never see thee more, and that which most of all vexeth me, is, that they never shall understand the truth of my Death, for the very stench of this loathsome Dungeon doth even stop my breath; farewel Orson too, for thou hast already suffered death for my sake, and more could no Man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my Natural Brother: Farewel my dear Mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my hopes are all frustrated, for I now must dye without the knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus Valentine lamented in the dark Pit, whilst his Enemies determine what shall be done to him: Some were of opinion to put him to death, others, that he should be committed to a perpetual Imprisonment: But Grygar being Lord over the rest, would not yield he should be put to death, but rather to keep him in Prison till Haufray and Henry have received knowledge of all their Proceedings. Having thus set down their resolution, they determined to take their Journey towards Paris, where the King then lay, to meet with Haufray and Henry, who entertained them Royally, being right glad that Valentine was fallen into their hands by Treason. Now understand, that Orson all that night was fain to rest within the Wood; lying down at the Root of a Tree: the morning being come, he took on his way towards Paris also, never resting till he came into the Presence of King Pepin: being come thither, by signs and tokens he shewed the manner of the taking of Valentine, but yet for all the haste he made, Grygar arrived at the Court before him. Haufray and Henry were much grieved that Orson had escaped, but all their comfort was, he

could

could not ſpeak, thinking thereby for to eſcape from miſtruſt and ſuſpition, but their hopes were all laid in the Duſt, as hereafter will appear.

The next Day the two Brethren had appointed that Grygar ſhould return in all haſte to the Caſtle to put Valentine to death, thereby thinking all their treaſons might paſs undiſcovered: But ſee how it came about, that all their counſels, were quite overthrown; for Orſon (as before is ſaid) came unto the Kings Palace that morning, and growing towards Dinner-time, the Tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with ſundry Nobles, Barrons, and Knights, came in, and every man took his place. The King being ſet, & caſting his eyes about, ſuddenly eſpyed Orſon, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that Valentine was not far off, but it fell out contrary. Orſon ran through the Hall, making a lamentable noiſe, and knocking his Breaſt in moſt hideous and fearful manner, which drave the King into ten thouſands fears, and all the reſt who beheld this lamentable ſpectacle. Orſon ran again along by the Table, looking very fiercely on every man, and making many fearful ſigns: Amongſt the reſt, at the laſt he lighted upon the traytor Grygar, who eſpying Orſon, hung his head in his boſome: Orſon having once got the ſight of him, ran furiouſly upon him, and gave him ſuch a ſturdy ſtroak, that he ſmote off one of his Ears; after he began to lay upon his face, inſomuch that he put out one of his Eyes, and broke one of his Teeth: Grygar being thus wounded, began to cry out for help, but Orſon hearing him make ſuch an uproar, ran again upon him, & gave him ſuch another ſtroak, that he felled him unto the earth, overthrowing Tables, Meat, and all that ſtood before him; which drave all the beholders into admiration: and had he not been reſcued by a valiant Prince that then ſat at Board, he had never gone from that place alive: which Prince having reſcued him, began to ſay unto the King on this manner: Mighty King, conſider into what Danger this man is fallen by the fury of this Wild-man; and either let him dye for this preſumptious Fact, or no man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him ſay ſo, replyed, We will conſider the cauſe, and as we find it, ſo we will proceed againſt him; Bring him hither before us, that we may queſtion the cauſe of this fact. Orſon was upon theſe words brought before

before the King, and he demanded how he durst presume so far into the Presence of his Majesty? Orson presently answered by signs, how that he had slain Valentine in the Forrest, & that he would be revenged for his death, on that inhumane traitor Grygar, and withal closed his fist, and put it to his mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. K. Pepin perceiving by his actions, the cause of the matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barrons on this manner: My Lords, you see as well as I, that this Wild-man hath Challenged Grygar to fight with him, therefore tell me your Opinions what is best to be done in this Case, for I cannot chuse but marvel why this Wild-man should find out Grygar above all the rest of the Knights here assembled: therefore let every Man freely speak for I much doubt some hidden secret to lye therein, and for my part I could willingly give consent that it should be tryed forth by combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barrons agreed to the verdict that the K. had passed. So the battel was determined, and Grygar was brought before the King, to the intent he should undergo the Challenge against the Wild-man: Grygar hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful, and sad, and not without cause; for he foresaw hereby, that his treason would come to light, and therewithal cast an ill favoured eye on Haufrey: Henry perceiving Grygar stand so amazed, said: Grygar, fear not, for I promise thee, howsoever it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will work your Peace assuredly, so that thou wilt swear never to reveal the fact: yea, (quoth Grygar) I well perceive how the case will go with me, I must suffer a reproachful death for your sake: having thus said, he left Henry, and returned unto the King, saying, Mighty King, let me make one request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous task, the reason chiefly moving me, is, that in combat that it is not man against man, whereby a Knight may win honour, but a Wild Savage to Encounter with man, & no Knight: I think I may safely (to your Grace be pleased) refuse the Combat. Nay (qd. the King) no excuse in this case can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not onely by my nobile, but also by the counsel of all my Barrons, and the reason moving us to grant it, was, that treason long lying hid, might come to light: Grygar hearing it thus concluded

ded on, grew more into deſpair, but *Haufrey* being there preſent, comforted him again on this manner: Doubt not, for you have equity on your part: and beſides, I will ſee you well armed in all points, ſtriving your Knightly rate.

When Orſon gathered by his wonted Signs, that he ſhould fight with this traitor, he was right glad, and withal, made ſhews unto the King that Valentine was dead, whereat the K. grew wondrous ſad, and fain would Orſon have been upon the back of Grygar, but that the King commanded him to be taken away; making ſigns unto him, that he ſhould ſtrike no more, till the time they ſhould meet for the tryal of the truth. Again, the King called unto Grygar, to make haſte to arm himſelf: Grygar loath to venture his life upon ſo uncertain ground, began once again to ſpeak unto the K. ſaying; Moſt dread Sovereign, I have been a long Servitor about your perſon, both in War and Peace, but you reward me not accordingly, inſomuch as you compel me to fight againſt a Man that hath neither ſence, reaſon, nor, in truth, humane ſhape: Grygar (ſaid the K.) if the truth be on your ſide, you need not fear, for you ſhall enter into the field well armed, and as for Orſon he ſhall adventure upon thee altogether unarmed. Again, you ſhall be well mounted on horſe-back, he on foot, nor ſhall he bear any weapon. The right, you ſay, is on your ſide, wherefore maintain that right, and ſhew your valour, for the ſentence of Combat may not be recalled.

CHAP. XIX.

How *Orſon* and *Grygar* fought together, and how *Orſon* returning Victor, cauſed *Grygar* to confeſs the Treaſon, who was after hanged, and *Valentine* delivered from the Dungeon.

The place of Combat being appointed, Orſon attended in a readineſs for his enemy; in the end, Grygar being well Armed by *Haufray* & *Henry*, took his leave of them on this wiſe: My Lords, in your cauſe I am delivered over to death, evil was the Day wherein I began this enterprize. Hold thy Peace (ſaid *Henry*) for I will defend thee from the ſentence of my Father, & work thy ſafety, ſo thou wilt be ſecret.

Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted on his horſe, went towards the Palace gate, where this Combat was to be effected: the

hour being come, the King repaired to the Window to behold the Combat: All the Nobles in the Court being assembled, the Judges were appointed, that no wrong should be offered on either part. So Grygar being entred the Lists, he espyed Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying:

William, thou art offered me great wrong, in putting out one of my eyes, but e're I part, I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me to the King. Orson perceiving whereunto his proud speeches tended, shewed him his Nails, gnashing his Teeth together at him: whereat Grygar suddenly Couched his Spear within his Rest, and ran upon him: Orson espying the Spear bent against him, gave back, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his mark, & ran his Spear fast into the ground, Orson taking this advantage, suddenly returning back again, seized the Spear into his own hands, and having hold thereof, gave his Enemy such a stroak therewith, that he astonied him. Grygar feeling the fury of his stroak, set spurs to his Horse, & rid like a mad man about the Field: Orson ran after him with a grinning countenance, making signs to the K. that he would e're long force him to yield unto him. Grygar feating the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured out these words: Ah Haufray, for thy cause and sake I am thus delibered over to death. Long and tedious was the fight, but Grygar could never so much as wound the wild-man.

At last Orson cast away his Spear, and came close to Grygar, in such manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad and furious, that he overthrew his Rider to the Earth, and with the fall he lost his Shield. Orson espying the Shield, took it up, and put it upon his own back, after he came unto Grygars Horse, and got upon him, riding round about the Field, and making ill-favoured signs and tokens; insomuch, as all the beholders there present, stood as men dismayed. Amongst the rest, the King himself appeared very sorrowful, & at last began thus to speak: My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this fight will grow; but it is my opinion, that there is treason smothered, and not yet come to light. Orson having now a great while ranged about the field on Horse back after his enemy, at last forsook his Horse, and encountred Grygar on foot, insomuch that he lent him such

ſuch a blow that he ſmote him to the earth; afterward he leaped upon him, and diſarmed him of his weapons: then the next blow he ſtruck, he ſmote off one of his armes: next on the Body he gave him ſuch a wound, that it cut him even to the reins of the back. Grygar having received all theſe wounds, cryed out moſt pittifully, inſomuch that every one requeſted he might have a Prieſt to Confeſs him of his ſins. The Guard that was appointed for the field, hearing theſe out-cryes, ſent out a worthy Kt. to demand what he would have done; Unto whom Grygar ſaid; Sir, bring me before the K. Majeſty, and before him and the reſt of this aſſembly I ſhall reveal the Treaſons wherein I am guilty, from point to point effectually.

CHAP. XX.

How *Grygar* being vanquiſhed by *Orſon*, confeſſed his Treaſon to K. *Pepin*; and how *Haufray & Henry* had been onely Plotters thereof againſt the worthy *Valentine*.

AT laſt Grygar was brought before the K. who asked pardon for his high offence, and in the preſence of all the beholders, told him, that the onely actors in this traiterous plot, were Haufray and Henry his Sons, and by their means he had taken Valentine and put him in Priſon, and there meaned (in ſecret manner) to have put him to death. The King having heard out his Tale, and perceiving the whole truth of this Plot againſt Valentine, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next Tree he came unto. The King having thus given ſentence againſt Grygar, called for his Horſe, and being mounted, made all haſt poſſible unto the Priſon where Valentine lay. Orſon perceiving the King in perſon would undertake ſuch a Journey, addreſſed himſelf to run along by the Kings Horſe, leading him the way, and making many ſigns of joy and gladneſs, all the way he went. The King marking well all the Wild-mans behaviour, often ſpake unto his Lords in this manner: My Lords, it is wonderful that this Wild-man ſhould bear ſuch an ardent affection towards Valentine; and beſides, it ſtrikes me into a thouſand imaginations: Now you muſt know, that the King had great cauſe, then to love this Wild-man, for that he was his natural Nephew, though as yet not revealed, neither was the time yet come, to bring it to light, till that by Clerimond (Siſter unto the Gyant Ferragus) it

should be made manifest; for at that time Clerimond had a Castle, & in it a Head of Brass, compoled by Negromancy, which head told unto Clerimond all that should happen unto her all her life: & also, all that ever she had done in her forepalled time: besides, this same head was compoled by such wondrous Magick Art, that it should never leave off speaking, until the Noblest Kt. in the world should enter the Castle, and then the Head utterly to give over, and never to speak more.

This Magical Spell fell out upon Valentine, whom that fair Lady Clerimond shall take to Husband, & for whom he shall endure a World of miseries, as (God willing) in the succeeding History you shall understand. So leave we this, and return back again to King Pepin, where before we left him. King Pepin goeth on his Journey towards the Forrest, to save the Life of Valentine, and Orson being with him, brought him unto the very Castle wherein he was impri-son'd. Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the King, barred the Gates, for so they were commanded by the residue within the Castle, upon pain of Life. The King perceiving he could not enter in peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by force, and so they did. Being gotten within the Castle, they seized upon all the seditious traytors, & bound them fast in chains, having so done, they went into the Dungeon where Valentine lay bound, & brought him forth unto the King: Valentine espying the K. fell upon his knees, yielding him thousands of thanks, for that extraordinary kindness shewed to him, in delivering him out of a Hell of darkness, & fear of death. The Barons also that attended the King, welcomed him with great joy & gladness, telling to him all that had hapned, and how that Orson had fought with the traytor Grygan, in his Quarrel, and overcame him: Valentine hearing thereof, embraced Orson. Afterward, the K. commanded that all the traytors should be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after spake thus unto Valentine; Valentine, seeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculously delivered out of the hands of thine enemies, I would advise thee to abide with me: but he replyed: Dread Sovereign, Pardon me, for I will never return again till I have found out the Parents of whence I am Descended; and so humbly I take leave of your Majesty,

So

So here leave we King Pepin, and only look upon Valentine & Orſon, who are taking their way towards Aquitain, to fight with the Green Kt. a man feared of all men: For I muſt call to remembrance, that of which I told you before, that he ſhould never be banquiſhed by any, ſave only by a Kings ſon that had never Sucked woman. Being come to Aquitain, the people flocked from all parts to ſee the rough & unmanly ſhape of Orſon, but Valentine ſeeing their folly, made him a Jacket of ſteel to put upon him, when Orſon had it on his back, he was much offended therewith, & would have thrown it away, but he much feared Valentine, & would do any thing that he commanded.

Orſon having his Steel Jacket upon his Back, looked much upon himſelf, and at laſt became proud thereof, and ſet his countenance according to his heart. Now as they were rideing on their way, Valentine eſpyed a fair Squire, making much lamentation: Valentine beholding him well, ſaid thus unto him: Friend, what ayleth you to ſhed theſe tears, have you ſuſtained any wrong either by Man or Beaſt? tell me what may be the cauſe, & I promiſe you the beſt of my power to relieve your diſtreſſed caſe: Alas, (ſaid the Squire) thereof I make no doubt; but know this, that the cauſe of my Laments, is the loſs of a moſt kind and gentle Maſter, and a Man of the Greateſt Valour in Chriſtendom. How have you loſt him? (quoth Valentine) Sir, as I was travelling towards Aquitain, to fight with the Green Knight, thinking thereby to win the fairest Lady in the world (called Fezon) which Lady it is not poſſible for any one to have, except firſt he overcome in ſingle Combat the Green Kt. Divers Valiant Kt. have there miſcarried: and when he conquereth them, he cauſeth them to be hanged on a Tree, and the number that are already dead, are thirty two, yielding no ſhew of mercy towards any. Is all this true (qd. Valentine) that thou haſt told me? Why then! ſure he is ſome devil in mans ſhape that doth ſuch ſtrange exploits: But towards Aquitain am I journeying, to try my fortune againſt him, for I have heard much of that Lady Fezon. Ha Sir (qd. the Squire) go not thither, to loſe your life upon ſuch a Devil; Squire, ſaid Valentine, I will go forward, & mean to cope with that famous Green Kt. but if I can eſcape him I will firſt talk with the Lady Fezon, and take her advertiſement.

Orſon

Orson gathering some understanding of their talk, made signs unto Valentine that he might fight with the Green Kt. and that he would make Love to the Lady Fezon; whereat Valentine laughed heartily. By this time, think them to be come near to the City of Aquitain, standing upon a hill; & meeting with an old man, he questioned with him, what City that was before him. Marry (quoth he) it is Aquitain. Now tell me, (said Valentine) where resteth the Green Knight? Why Sir (said he) without the City, I think you are going to fight with him. I (qd. Valentine) Ah Sir (said the old man) undertake not so foul a folly, for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither my Son, and stand thou on this little Hill, and I shall shew thee above forty famous Kts. hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome. Also there is now but fifteen days to be accomplished, & the Duke of Aquitain must part with his fair Daughter Fezon, to his great grief, & the overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father (qd. Valentine) the Gods defend her. He had no sooner spoke these words, but there came another ancient man of fourscore years of age, in the habit of a Pilgrim. This man was that Blandiman, Squire to the distressed Bellisant, that it was that led his Lady Bellisant into the Castle of Ferragus the Gyant, as before we have declared. Valentine espying him, demanded of him whence he was, and whence he came? Sir, quoth the Pilgrim, from Constantinople, but I could not enter into the City, by reason of a Pagan Soudan had begirt it with a Siege, neither could I come to deliver the message on which I am sent, wherefore I thought it my fairest course to return. Pilgrim (qd. Valentine) what thinkest thou of the Green Knight, is it not possible he should be overcome? No said the Pilgrim, I advise you not to follow the enterprize, for if there were a whole hundred of you, he would be the end of you all. Father, whether go you, said Valentine? Sir, I take my readiest way to Paris, for I have a Message to King Pepin, from a Sister of his named Bellisant, that long hath been banished from Constantinople wrongfully; & now is the good Lady in the House of a Gyant, that keepeth her, and useth her honourably, intending to know King Pepins mind, whether he be consented to these wrongs done unto her, for he well knoweth she is a vertuous Lady, and for her sake, offereth to put himself in single Combat

with

with the Emperor of Greece, for that he hath so wrongfully Banished her. Palmer (q. Valentine) I pray thee to return back again with me to Aquitain, for thither am I going, to fight with the Grecian Kt. If the Gods give me victory against him, I will accompany thee into France, for I shall tell thee, only for the love I bear unto King Pepin, undertake I this fight, for he hath been the means of my preservation & as a Father unto me. Therefore to him I dedicate all my labours, and rest wholly at his command. Sir (qd. Blanchman) in this motion I will never consent, for my Ly. hath put me in trust to dispatch her affairs, & I will discharge the duty of a trusty Servant towards her, and so taking my leave, I commend you to the protection of the Gods. The Palmer being gone, Valentine looked long after him, and not without cause, but he wist not why, for this was the man that had born a part of his Mothers trifles. Well, Valentine also took on his Journey, and after some few days, came near to the City of Aquitain.

Valentine beheld the City very earnestly, and passing on he espyed a pleasant Fountain, thither he went, and alighting from his Horse, laid him down under a Tree, to refresh his tired limbs, and Orson was his keeper all the while he slept; Anon he awaked and prepared himself to take Horse again, but suddenly there arrived at the same Fountain, a most curious Kt. proud and of so haughty a stomach, that he was stiled the proud Kt. and withal, so fierce and resolute, that he never all the days of his life asked question of any man, yet if he whom he met saluted him not, he presently killed him. This proud Knight came to the Fountain, and Valentine beholding him, said never a word, & Orson also gazed fiercely upon him. The proud Kt. was angred in his heart, and approached near unto Orson, and gave him such a blow, that the b'od issued out of his mouth; Orson feeling the blow smart, suddenly took him & threw him to the earth under him, and presently espying a knife at the Kts. girdle strove him therewith into the body so deep, that he was nothing but blood. The Knight feeling himself wounded, cryed out aloud, whereupon Valentine coming in rescued the Knight out of Orsons hands, and said: Fair Knight, you have offered great wrong to strike a poor wild man on this rude manner, who can speak never a word: with that the Proud Knight began thus roughly to answer *Valentine*:

Proud

Proud Miscreant, why then dost thou not salute me? & therewith drew forth a Glave, thinking to have smitten him, Valentine seeing the blow, drew forth his Sword, & struck at the proud Kt. with such violence, that he struck him dead, & said unto him: Hereafter learn thou to salute men in a more friendly manner. The proud Kt. being dead, his men fled with all the haste they could unto Aquitain, bearing tydings of their Masters death. Duke Savary hearing thereof, was greatly displeased, for he was his Cozen.

Amongst the rest, Valentine understood of the lamentation that was for the death of the Proud Kt. beside the Fountain: whereupon he suddenly mounted on Horse-back, & entred the City, where he lodg'd in a Burgesses House of the same City, whereby it came to the ears of Duke Savary, that he had slain his Cozen. And the Duke commanded that Valentine & his Brother Orson should be brought before him: so being come into the presence of the Duke, he began on this manner: Friend (qd. he) of whence are you? What Prince do you serve; and whether be ye Knights, or no? Sir (said Valentine) I am a Knight, & owe my duty and service to the famous K. Pepin of France. Then said the Duke unto him; You are slain my Cozen: 'tis true (said Valentine) and so I should have done, had it been my own kinsman, for he was of so high a stomach, that he disdained to speak to any man, & smote so furiously at my Companion, that he had near hand killed him: which I perceiving, drew forth my Sword & slew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a stranger in this City, and hither am I come to Combat with the Green Kt. as also to behold that beautious Lady Fezon, whom the whole world admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of equity, for strangers to pass up & down in safety: Consider, I have shewed you the cause of my coming: When the Duke heard Valentine say so, he said unto him: Knight, right well hast thou answered me, and seeing my Cozen hath come by this more by Pride, than Courage, I am right forrowful, & so I past it over, and pardon the deed. But in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to Combat the Green Knight: come you into my Palace, and there you shall behold the beauty for which you thus far adventured. Moreover, that you may see that you are not come alone, you shall behold fifteen Knights to accompany you, & new arrived for the Love of the Lady Fezon, and to try their Valour against the

said

ſaid Green knight their Enemy. So, I ſay, to my Palace, ſalute my Daughter, as my cuſtom is to ſtrangers, before they adventure their perſons in battel with the Green knight, and having preſented your ſelves before her in the ſign of love, you ſhall receive from her a Ring of Gold.

Sir, quoth Valentine, I ſhall be ready to do all Rights and Cuſtoms belonging to this place, & beſides, I will obey you in all things whatſoever it ſhall pleaſe you to command me. This converſe ended, the Duke went into the Caſtle, accompanied with Valentine and Orſon. Having entred the Hall where the knights were aſſembled, Valentine beheld the Lady ſitting amongſt them, and making his way unto her, with all duty & Reverence, at laſt he ſaluted her thus: Lady, you whoſe Beauty and Fame is blaſted through the world, the Gods preſerve thee from the Green knight, who I dare boldly avouch is not worthy to touch your ſupereſſellent lips. Moreover, dear Lady, may it pleaſe you to underſtand, that Pepin the Mighty King of France hath ſent me hither to preſent unto you the moſt Noble Man that liveth on the earth; wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no man, nor any weapon, albeit he cannot ſpeak: wherefore I aſſure you that the Green knight is not able to withſtand his mighty force, nor make any reſiſtance againſt him. Sir (quoth the Lady) I yield unto the K. of France thouſands of thanks, as alſo to you that have taken ſuch pains to preſent ſuch a one before me: But ſay, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better cloathed, for methinks he is of an excellent perſon, well formed, ſtrait, and of a hardy countenance; and if he were waſhed & bathed in ſome excellent Liquor, his fleſh would be both white and ſoft. Lady (qd. Valentine) he never wore Garment till it was very lately, & then I cauſed this Jacket you ſee him wear, to be made fitting to his body: Moreover, I aſſure you, that when he came firſt into Paris, he came like a Wild, Sabage, and Naked Man, & his fleſh was ſo hard, that he neither feared wind nor cold. While he was ſpeaking theſe words, Fezon beheld him very wiſely, for ſhe was in love with him in heart: But yet Valentine began again thus to ſpeak unto her, Lady, for my ſelf I muſt ſay ſomething alſo, therefore, know this, that only for the love of you, I have ventured my ſelf in this Climate, to ſee if fortune will ſo much favour me, that I may bear you away from all comers, by force of arms: & yet

fair Lady, one thing more I have to utter unto you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto my ſelf, that I will never return again into France, till I have proved my fortune on the Green Knight, and with him do I intend to cope before I part hence; and either deliver him over into your hands as Conquered, or ſuffer Death, as many more before me have led the way. Alas, Knight, ſaid the Lady, put not your ſelf in danger for my ſake, for methinks it is folly in any man, to endanger himſelf for the good of another: Again, there be many valiant Knights have miſcarried in ſeeking my Love, and I the unhappieſt living, to ſee theſe unfortunate days. Lady, quoth he, what I have vowed, I mean to accompliſh: Why then, fair Kt. God be thy ſpeed; and therewithal drew forth two Rings of Gold, giving Valentine the one, and Orſon the other, alſo they ſat down at the Table amongſt the other Kts. and were welcomed with great feaſtings. Being ſet at the Table, Fezon ſtill fixed her eye moſt on Orſon, & Orſon upon her, as it were interchangeably glancing lovelooks one to another, with exceeding gracious aſpects: now in the midſt of all theſe Feaſtings, the Green Kt. (as his cuſtome was) came thundring at the Gates, only to have a ſight of the beautious Lady Fezon, for you ſhal underſtand, that ſuch were the conditions between him and the Duke Savary, that every day it ſhould be lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady without contradiction. Being entred the great Hall, his manner was, to cry out with a loud voice, ſaying: Valiant Duke of Aquitain, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me, for the love of this Lady? The Duke anſwered, yea, I have yet within my Palace, fifteen valiant Kts. that mean to try their fortune upon thee, before they depart my Country. When ſaid the Green Kt. let me ſee them; and likewiſe the fair Lady Fezon: Enter, ſaid the Duke, for thou haſt free liberty. Herewithal the Green Kt. entred the Hall, ſternly beholding all the Kts. one after another, at laſt when he had gone through them all, he began to ſpeak to them on this manner: Lords, eat and drink, & make merry, for to morrows day ſhall be your laſt: and know that it will fall out to all your ſhares to be hanged on the top of my Tree, as many before you have been ſerved.

Valentine well marking his high words, grew exceeding angry, and at laſt began to anſwer him: Proud Kt. theſe vaunts might well

well have lyen ſmothered in thy breaſt, for I tell thee, this day is come hither a Knight that ſhall hold thee tack, more then any that ever yet encountred thee, and whereas thou triumphantly haſt conquered many, he it is ſhall vanquiſh thee, & leave thy dead Corps a Prey for ravenous Beaſts. Now Orſon underſtood that Valentine ſpoke all this of him, & alſo knew this to be the Green Ke, by whom ſo many valiant men had loſt their lives: inſomuch, that he ſalluted him with a fierce Viſage, and whetting his Teeth leapt from the Table, and taking the Green knight by the middle threw him upon his neck, as if he had been a little Child, & having him at that advantage, eſpying a wall, threw the Green knight with ſuch violence againſt the ſame, that all the beholders thought he had verily broken his neck, for he lay as dead, and to ſet him down again at the Table, as before, and in a laughing geſture made ſigns, that he would bear upon his Neck three ſuch as the Green Knight.

At this ſudden action of Orſon, all the Knights there aſſembled began to laugh, and coming one towards the other, ſaid: Now is he come indeed, that ſhall be the overthrow of the Green Knight; but we cannot chuſe but lament the woful chance that ſhall befal the Lady Fezon, for he cannot ſpeak, & yet is worthy all honor amongſt the valianteſt. The Lady on the other ſide, beholding his valour, was inſtantly overcome with the love of Orſon, that only he conquered her heart, & left all the reſt hopeleſs, of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the Green knight was again recovered, and counting it a deed of Courage, began thus to ſay in the aforeſaid preſence: Lords, this wild-man hath deceived my truſt, for he came upon me unawares, without ſaying any word; but I think good to let you underſtand, that in the morning I ſhall be better provided: and to the end I may make him an example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibbet of purpoſe, higher and ſtronger than for any that have been vanquiſhed by me; and thereon I will hang his Beaſtly Corps, for Beaſts and Birds to make their Prey.

CHAP. XXI.

How *Orson* encountred the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: Also how *Valentine* attempted to Fight with him, but could not overcome him.

ORson perceiving the Green Knight displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to chatter with his lips, making signs that he would meet him on the morrow, and fight with him, and in token thereof, took off his head, and threw it on the ground as his Gage: which Valentine seeing, spake thus to the Green Knight: Sir, the wild-man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath thrown down his Gage, whereof, if your stomach serve, I advise you to take it up: Hereat the Green Knight fretted so exceedingly, that he replyed never a word. Duke Savary being present, said unto him: Sir Kt. I, well perceive that the Barrel will grow strong between the wild-man and you, & I think that he will hold you tough play: wherefore if you chance to conquer him also, you may well Report of your Valour throughout the World, for he hath tryed some part of his courage already: & in vanquishing him, you need not stand in fear of any. The Green Knight hereat more and more enraged swore by all the Gods, that e're the-morrow Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his strength, for he should never return again from the field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the rest: and with these Words left the Castle, and betook him to his Pavillion.

He being departed, the rest of the Knights still remained with the Lady Fezon, making great joy, and saying one to another, that the day was come, that the Green knight should meet with his Match. On the other side, fame had so spread abroad the worthy act of Orson the Savage upon the Green knight, that multitudes of people resorted into the Palace, to see & behold him; insomuch that the Duke commanded the Gates to be shut against them. Orson perceiving the people so abundantly to approach, & hearing the noise, leapt up into a Window to behold the People, so that they willing to see him, and he desirous to see them, at Night they all departed to their Houses. The people being departed, & supper ended, they passed the rest of the night in merriments, & so to bed. Valentine being brought to his Cham-

ber,

ber, went to bed, making ſigns to Orſon to lye down by him; but he not regarding his kindneſs, laid him down upon the Ground, according to his wonted uſe, & ſo paſſed away that night. Morning being come, Valentine & Orſon went into the Hall, where they found the fair Lady Fezon, accompanied with the other Kts. holding a diſpute among themſelves, who ſhould firſt fight with the Green Kt. At laſt ſtood up a worthy Kt. of France (called Gelaram) and ſaid; Lords, ſo you be pleaſed, I am the man intended the firſt Tryal; to this they agreed, and preſently armed him. Being armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave in all joy; and ſhe to requite his kindneſs, gave him free leave, wiſhing the Gods to preſerve and keep him in all danger, ſo that he may return as Conqueror: The Kt. moſt humbly thanked her, and ſo took Horſe, and haſted him towards the Tent of the Green Knight. The Green Kt. perceiving from far his approach, let Spurs to his Horſe, & Encountred the famous Knight Galeram ſo fiercely, that he ſmote him off the Horſe to the Earth: the Green Kt. ſeeing him on the Ground, ſuddenly lighted from his Horſe, and took off the Helm from his head: Galeram fearing nothing but preſent death, yielded to the mercy of him, but all in vain, for without pity, he firſt deſpoiled him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a tree, as he had done the reſt before. Orſon perceiving that Galeram was put to death, made ſigns with his hands that he would fight with him preſently, not letting him have any reſpite: but Valentine anſwered him again by ſigns, that he ſhould withdraw himſelf for a while; for he would firſt go try his own ſtrength on him: Hereupon he preſently put himſelf in Arms, and being armed, took his way towards the beautious Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him: being come before her, ſhe grew wonderous ſorrowful, & yet at laſt ſhe ſpake unto him on this manner: Alas, fair Kt. what madneſs is this in you, to adventure your ſelf for the love of ſuch an unfortunate Lady as I? Well, if thou wilt needs run into danger, go on, but I will invocate the Gods to aid and aſſiſt thee againſt thine and mine enemy; and ſo farewel.

Leave thus taken of the Lady and the reſt of the Knights, Valentine mounted his Horſe, to take his Way toward the Green Kt. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a Worthy Kt. who was likewiſe enamoured with the love of the Lady, and thus began

to

to ſay to him: Sir, have a little patience, I entreat you, and ſuffer me to go firſt. Friend (quoth Valentine) I freely grant your deſire; go, and return with Victory. This Knights name was Tyris, born in Savoy, a man of great Birth and Living, but riotouſly had run through his means, leaving himſelf little, ſave only his Horſe and Arms: having thus obtained leave of Valentine, he alſo took leave of the Lords there aſſembled, and ſo departed unto the Tent of the Green knight; the Green knight perceiving Tyris to approach, leapt out of his Pavillion to welcome him. Tyris ſeing him, ſaid: Sir, preſently mount thy Horſe and defend thy ſelf, for I breath out defiance againſt thee: The Green Kt. hearing him ſay ſo, called for his Horſe which was preſently brought unto him; and putting his foot into the ſtirrup, ſuddenly ſeated himſelf in the Saddle, & betook him to his Spear & Green Shield, preparing to take their courſe at each other; but at the firſt encounter, the Green Kt. ran ſo furiouſly, that he ſmote Tyris quite through the Body with his Spear, ſo that he fell down ſtark dead; which he perceiving, put a Cord about his neck, and hang'd him up amongſt the reſt.

Valentine hearing of the death of Tyris, was wonderful ſorrowful, yet taking courage, he recommended himſelf to the Gods: having thus done, he put ſpurs to his Horſe, and took his way ſpeedily towards the Tent wherein the Green knight remained. When the Green Kt. eſpyed him, he was more fearful of him, than of all the reſt; wherefore he called unto him, ſaying: Kt. give ear unto this I now ſhall ſay; ſeeſt thou yonder Tree? there ſhalt thou find hanging a Green Shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir (ſaid Valentine) you have ſervants enough of your own, ſend them, for by me it ſhall never be fetched: By my Law (qd. the Green knight) you ſhall either bring me the Shield, or elſe know this, you ſhall never conquer me. When Valentine had well conſidered theſe words he ſpake as touching the fetching of the Shield, he valiantly rode towards the Tree, but he loſt his labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was ſorrowful, & returning unto the Green Kt. in an angry mood, ſaid thus unto him: Go fetch thy Shield thy ſelf, for I cannot have it, wherefore accurſed be that Magician that ſo faſtned it: And an evil end betide him that ſent me thither to fetch it. Friend (qd. the Green-Knight) ſhall I tell thee wherefore

I

I ſent thee thither; it was, for that this Shield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth ſuch vertue, that no man, be he never ſo ſtrong, can take it from the place where it is faſtned, ſave only he alone, by whom I ſhall be overcome; and for the doubt I ſtood in of thee, therefore ſent I thee thither, now my doubt is ſatisfied; & therefore I adviſe thee to return to the Place from whence thou cameſt, & ſave thy ſelf; for ſeing thee ſo fair a Kt. I am forced to pitty thee, and take no pleaſure in thy death, from which thou canſt not eſcape, if thou fighteſt with me. Further to the end thou ſhoulded not think I uttered theſe words to abuſe thy patience, know this: That there is none living that can vanquiſh me, except firſt, he be the Son of a King, and next, ſuch a one as never ſucked the Breaſt of any Woman. Now if thou beſt ſuch a one, thou mayeſt overcome me, if not, thou doſt but ſhorten thy own days by an untimely death. At theſe words Valentine took little pleaſure, knowing that by this relation he could not be that man: but ſeeing that he was come to that Enterpize, he would not return till he had aſſayed his ſtrength againſt him: and therefore with a loud voice he ſpake thus unto the Green Knight: Valiant and redoubted Knight, I well underſtand I am not the man by whom you ſhall be conquered, yet whoſoever I am, I will not depart hence until I have fought with you. By the Gods (quoth the Green Kt.) then thou haſt ſome ſecret Treaſon to work againſt me, that thus thou runneſt upon thy death wilfully: but e're I part with thee, I will make thee know the price of this thy raſhneſs: and therewithal leapt upon his Horſe, bidding one of his Servants to bring unto him a box of precious Balm, the vertue of it was ſuch, that what wound ſoever he received, though never ſo mortal, it had power inſtantly to heal up the breach, having had proof thereof before.

After he had received the box of Ointment, he ſuddenly put ſpurs to his Horſe, & couching his Spear in his reſt, both ran their courſe ſo furiouſly, that their ſpears brake in many pieces: And they ſuddenly bending themſelves to the next Courſe, moſt valiantly drew out their Swords, whereat Valentine behaved himſelf ſo nimbly, that he gave the Green knight ſo fell a ſtroak, that he cut him through his Armour, inſomuch that the blood iſſued out in great abundance. The Green Kt. feeling himſelf wounded, lift up his arm to fetch a blow, that he ſtruck away a great piece of his Thigh,

and

and having thus wounded him, said unto him: You may see I can wield a sword as well as you. I told you before, that you would fall under my hand, & anon I shall be fain to hang your dead Corps on a tree, as I have done the rest of the Kts. as came before you. Pagan (said Valentine) haunt not thy self overmuch, for as yet I am not conquered; therefore defend thy self, & therewith he gave the Green Kt. such a blow, that he smote away a great quarter of his Shield, & the Green Kt. at the same encounter, brake his sword upon the helm of Valentine, and with the violence of the blow, felled him from off his Horse: Valentine being always valiant, suddenly recovered him upon his feet. The Pagan seeing him rise up, drew out a sharp-pointed knife, and threw it at Valentine, but he seeing it come, started a little aside, so that it missed him. The Green Kt. being thus unarmed of his weapons, turned about his Horse, thinking to have recovered them again, but Valentine being on the ground, and seeing his opportunity, cut off his Horse feet, so that both he and his Horse came tumbling to the earth. Being on the earth he suddenly arose again, and then they were both together by strength of arms holding one another. But to be short, the bickering was so fierce between them, that they were both sore wounded.

The Pagan quickly healed his wounds with the Balm before spoken of. This fight continued so long, that the day began to shut in, & both grew extream weary. The Green Kt. was sore vexed that he could not overcome Valentine, and though he were even spent in weariness, yet he proudly bare it out, saying: Knight, give over, for I perceive thy weariness, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little honour for me to conquer thee. Go, return again to Aquitain, and rest there this night, & report that there never encountred me so valiant a Knight as thou art.

But meet me to morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of all thy friends, for thou shalt never return. Valentine accepted his kind offer, and was glad thereof, for he was weary & sore wounded: So going to his horse, which was in another field, he returned back again to the City: When Duke Savary and his Lords saw Valentine return, they were joyful, & received him in great honour: among the rest there assembled, was Orson, who ran & caught him in his arms, and kissed him. Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded

what

what tydings from the Green Knight? Sir, (Valentine) he reſteth in his Pavilion, & I think he is of that puiſſant ſtrength & courage, that there is not a man living able to vanquiſh him. Valentine (qd. the Duke) you have eſcaped well, for never did any return as yet, but all have periſhed under the hand of the Green Kt. wherefore you have proved your ſelf a valiant Kt. Gracious Duke (ſaid Valentine) of my conqueſt over him I can make but ſmall boaſt, but to morrow there is appointed a new tryal of Hand-head, & the Victory may light upon whom the Gods pleaſe to favour. Having thus ended conference with the Duke, Valentine was unarmed, and then conducted to the Chamber of the Lady Fezon. The Lady was right joyful to ſee him return with life from the combat of the Green Kt. By this time ſupper drew on, & the Duke taking his place at the table, cauſed Valentine to be ſet on his left hand, at the upper end of the board, for the Duke did honor him in the higheſt degree that might be. Supper being ended, Valentine withdrew himſelf unto his private Chamber, & the Green Knight reſted in his Pavilion, where we will leave him, & ſpeak of Valentine, who being in his Chamber, made many complaints.

CHAP. XXII.

How *Valentine* took good advice, and ſent *Orſon* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight; and how *Orſon* overcame him.

VAlentine having appointed the morrow to fight with the Green Knight, began to be troubled wondrouſly as he lay in Bed: ſtill bethinking him on what had hapned him the day before. At laſt when he had ruminated all his imaginations, he began to reſolve on this Concluſion. I am not, neither can be that Kings Son that ſhould overcome the Green Knight, for I can neither remove the Shield he ſent me for, neither was I nouriſhed without the Breaſt of Woman. Again, I am very doubtful of the combat, & therefore ſtand wavering whereupon to rely. At laſt he began thus to think: What if Orſon ſhould be armed in my ſtead, & thereby try the worſt of fortunes wrack: why? It ſhall be ſo. The break of the day appearing, he aroſe from his weary bed, & coming unto Orſon, he told him by ſigns, how that he ſhould put on his Armour, and take his horſe, and make towards the Green Knights Pavillion to fight with him.

Orſon underſtanding by ſigns his hearts intent, leaped & danced up & down the Hall joyfully, making ſigns to Valentine again, that the Pagan knight ſhould never eſcape his hands, and denying his Horſe and Arms, deſire nothing of him ſave only a Club of Wood, ſuch a one as he was accuſtomed to weild, & ſhakeing his head, made ſigns that he would have no other Armor againſt the Pagan knight. Valentine ſeeing him ſo reſolute, gave him to underſtand by ſigns, that he muſt put on the ſame Armor, and ride on the ſame Horſe that Valentine brought out of France: for that the Knight ſhould know no other but that it was Valentine that came againſt him. The Wildman underſtanding the ſubtilty intended, agreed unto all that Valentine commanded him. So Orſon was armed with the ſame Armor and Horſe which Valentine had imployed the day before. Orſon being thus armed (contrary to his accuſtomed manner) ſeemed a right Perſonable creature, and made many ſigns that he would overcome the Green Knight e're the noon tide of the day, without either mercy or pitty; and in theſe ſigns he was ſo earneſt, that he cauſed great laughter throughout all the aſſembly then preſent. Orſon thus prepared, he took his leave of Duke Savary, and embraced Valentine, & made him ſigns to ſtand in fear of nothing, for before that he returned, he would bring the Green Kt. with him either alive or dead.

After this manner departed Orſon, but before he took his Horſe, he had forgot to take his leave of the fair Lady Fezon, ſo returning back to the Palace, where the Lady ſat accompanied with her Train, and eſpying her, would have run unto her and kiſſed her, for by ſigns he gave her to underſtand, that for the love of her he would preſently fight with the Pagan Knight. The Lady in a ſmile, returned back again (in ſign) that ſhe loved him exceeding well; wiſhing him to bear himſelf valiantly, and at his return back again, ſhe would grant unto him her love. Thus having taken his leave of the Lady Fezon, & the reſt there aſſembled, he betook him to his Horſe, & being gone from the Dukes Palace, there was nothing ſo much talked generally throughout the City, as the Wild-man was gone to Combat with the Green Knight, whereat was much wonder. It was not long but Orſon came unto the Pabillion of the Green Knight, and without any Words ſmote the top thereof with his Spear, ſignifying Defiance.

The

The Gꝛæn knight taking this ruſtick ſalutation in great ſcoꝛn, ſwoꝛe by Mahomet, that he would Fetter his Pꝛide e'ꝛe the Evening Sun took ꝛeſt, and theꝛewithal mounted on his Steed, and couching his Spear in his Reſt, he entꝛed the Field againſt Oꝛſon.

Oꝛſon ſeeing him in a ꝛeadineſs, ſeemed to give back, as half afꝛaid and pꝛeſently having gathꝛed moꝛe Courage, they Encountꝛed with ſuch foꝛce that both Hoꝛſe and Men fell to the Eaꝛth: Being both down, they lightly ꝛecoveꝛed theiꝛ feet, dꝛew foꝛth theiꝛ Swoꝛds, and laid one at the otheꝛ ꝛight fieꝛcely. The Gꝛeen Knight being fiꝛed with anger and pꝛide, ſmote Oꝛſon ſuch a gꝛeat blow that he cut the Ciꝛcle of Gold upon his Helm, and ſmote a gꝛeat piece of his Shield quite off, and wounded Oꝛſon ſo dꝛeꝛply, that with the outꝛage of the ſtꝛoak, his Swoꝛd fell out of his hand. Oꝛſon ſeeing the blood ꝛun down about him, was faꝛ moꝛe fieꝛce then befoꝛe, ꝛouling his eyes, and ſhaking his head: at laſt with his ſwoꝛd he took the Gꝛant ſuch a pat upon his head, that he entꝛed the fleſh & bate a gꝛeat paꝛt theꝛeof aboꝛe him, and his Swoꝛd ſliding off his head, took him on the aꝛm ſo powꝛfully, that the blood followed in gꝛeat abundance. The Gꝛæn knight having his foꝛmeꝛ Balſamum, feaꝛed no wounds, which made Oꝛſon think it was in vain any longeꝛ to uſe his Swoꝛd, ſith he could heal himſelf ſo quickly.

Upon this, Oꝛſon thꝛew away all his Aꝛmour and Weapons, & ſuddenly ꝛun upon the Gꝛæn knight, & caught him faſt by the aꝛms ſo ſtꝛongly, that he caſt him on the Gꝛound: Being unde ꝛ him, Oꝛſon took off his Helm, & held him ſo down that the Gꝛeen Kꝛ. did yield to his meꝛcy; Oꝛſon nothing ꝛegaꝛding his ſubmiſſion, would ſuddenly have taken away his life, if Valentine had not fallen in pꝛeſently to his ꝛeſcue, by ꝛiding poſt, to ſee the end of the Combat. Being come, he made ſigns to Oꝛſon that he ſhould not kill him, which Oꝛſon obeyed, but ſtill kept him in ſubjection. And at laſt Valentine began to ſpeak to the Gꝛeen knight ſaying: Pꝛoud Kꝛ. you well ſee that you aꝛe in the hands of youꝛ Enemy, wheꝛefoꝛe I thing it fit that you ſuffeꝛ pꝛeſent death, foꝛ look how you have done to the vanquiſhed knights, by hanging them on yonder Tꝛee, ſo likewiſe you youꝛ ſelf ſhould be hanged on the higheſt Bꝛanch of all, aboꝛe the ꝛeſt. Alas (quoth the Gꝛeen knight) you ſeem to be a man of pitty, fuꝛniſhed with couꝛteſie, theꝛefoꝛe my ꝛequeſt unto

you is, to ſpare my life. No, (quoth Valentine) that ſhall I not except upon condition; Firſt, that you renounce your Paganiſm: and Secondly, go with me into France to King pepin, telling him that by Valentine and Orſon you were overcome in ſingle Combat. To all theſe conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my Oath to perform whatſoever you have already ſpoken.

Then Valentine made ſigns unto Orſon, that he ſhould riſe, which he readily obeyed, but ſo that he left him nothing about him to make any further reſiſtance. Being upon his feet, he ſpake thus unto Valentine: Sir it was you that combated againſt me yeſterday, therefore you, & none but you did I expect this day alſo, but I ſee I am conquered by the man, that in the Dukes palace threw me on the ground. True (qd. Valentine) the very ſame. Why then (qd. the Green Kt.) I ſhall reveal unto thee one ſecret more, and I beſeech thee grant unto me

my

my requeſt; ſend this Knight that hath conquered me unto yonder tree, and if he bring away with him the Shield their laſtneſs, then I am well aſſured he is the man that ſhould conquer me, or elſe there is none living can triumph in my requeſt. Hereupon Valentine made a ſign unto Orſon to fetch away that Shield, who did as he appointed him, and coming near the Tree, he ſtretched forth his arm to take it down, and ſuddenly it leaped into his hand, and ſo he brought it with him to the Green Knight. When he ſaw Orſon have the Shield, his heart ſmote againſt his ſides, and throwing himſelf at his feet would have killed them: but Orſon receiving ſigns from Valentine to the contrary, would not ſuffer him, but took him by the arms and lifted him up: Being upon his feet, he ſpake thus: Alas, I of all others, owe unto you all my ſervice, and all reverence: for now I am aſſured you are both a hardy & a valiant knight, and amongſt all other I confeſs that by conquering me, you have won unto your ſelf Everlaſting Fame.

Moreover, this aſſure your ſelf, that he that conquers me, can be no leſs than Son unto a King and Queen, and muſt be ſuch a one as never ſucked the Breaſt of any Woman: and that this ſhall appear to be truth, I ſhall further prove it by my Siſter Clerimond, for ſhe hath a Head of Braſs that telleth her the adventures and Fortunes that to her and all her Generation ſhall befal. Likewiſe, that this Head ſhall continue ſpeaking until ſuch time as the moſt worthieſt Knight of the World enter into the Chamber where it now ſtandeth, and he being once entred, the ſaid Head ſhould loſe his breath, and is the only man to have my Siſter Clerimond to Wife; wherefore (fair Knight) theſe things thus fallen out as you ſee, I greatly deſire you would Wed my Siſter, as the moſt hardieſt and Renowned Knight in the whole World.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Orſon having conquered the Green Knight, *Valentine* cauſed him to be Chriſtned, and ſending him to King *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight.

The Green Knight having made this motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto Valentine a Ring of Gold upon condition that he would carry that Ring unto her: which Ring Valentine accepted, and the Green Knight yielded himſelf as a Priſoner, and is now going towards France, to accompliſh that Oath that he before had given him. Valentine having received this Ring, never reſted till he had ſeen the Lady ſo commended unto him. After this the Green Knight (by conſent) was Crowned King of the Green Mountain, and there held great ſtate: preſently upon this league of friendſhip concluded, he gave commandment throughout all his Hoſt, that every man ſhould depart away from the Confines of Aquitain, and return into their Countries without doing any further damage to Duke Savaries Country. The Pagan Army thus diſmiſſed, Valentine and Orſon took & led him as a Priſoner into the City of Aquitain, whereat was no little joy: & the Duke with all his Lords, received him with great Triumph into the City. The Green Knight being thus brought as Priſoner to the Duke, began to ſay on this manner: My Lords, you owe much honor unto the knight that hath conquered me: and further, I give you to underſtand for certain, that he can be no leſs then Son unto a King; and alſo, that he never ſucked Womans breaſt, for if he had, he could not have been my Conqueror, for ſo it was ever ſaid by the Brazen Head that ſtanderh in the Chamber of my Sister Clerimond. Mo. the Duke, well may this carry ſome likelihood of Truth, for he hath born himſelf very valiantly againſt you, wherefore I think it my part to honor him with my utmoſt endeavours.

By this time is this Worthy Train entered the Dukes Palace, whither the Duke commanded his Daughters preſence, and then he ſaid unto her; Daughter, behold here the Green knight, that hath for your love made ſpoil of my Country, and I was no way

able

able to repel him back, but only by this valiant Kt. that Valentine hath brought along with him, from the Court of K. Pepin, who hath extraordinarily freed us of our fears: wherefore this is my deſire, that as he hath Conquered yours and mine Enemy, ſo he may alſo conquer your Love, whereunto I right willingly agree that you ſhall have him for your Husband. The Duke having thus ſaid, the Lady anſwered for her ſelf in this manner: My redoubted Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no reaſon why I ſhould reſiſt, but do ſubmit my ſelf to your diſpoſe, for if I ſhould do otherwiſe, it were in me great diſobedience. And again, my Lord, you know promiſe is already paſt, that whoſoever he was that could vanquiſh the Pagan knight, ſhould for his labour receive me for his Wife: Now my Lord, the day of my deliverance is come, ſo then (according to your promiſe) you muſt give him to me, and I receive him as my lawful Spouſe; otherwiſe I ſhall make void the edict before gone throughout the World, and you thought falſe in your promiſes. Daughter (quoth the Duke) you have ſpoken right graciouſly, and your anſwer pleaſeth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us, wherefore it were not amiſs to know of the Conquerour Knight whether he will have you. If he agree unto this match, I ſhall give him in dowry half my Country of Aquitain: Hereupon Valentine ſtanding by, demanded of Orſon by ſigns, whether he would haſte the fair Lady Fezon to Wife; Who anſwered again by ſigns, that he would never have other: Then cauſed the Duke to be brought before him a Prieſt, who then contracted them: and ſo there time was paſſed with many diſports. Theſe things thus ended, Orſon made ſigns unto the Lady, that he would never lye with her till he had gotten the uſe of his tongue, and that his Companion Valentine had conquered the Love of the Lady Clerimond. Of all which you ſhall here more hereafter.

CHAP. XXIV.

How the ſame night that *Orſon* was made ſure to the Lady *Fezon* an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge ſhe gave unto him.

The day being paſt with great Banquettings and Solemnity, wherein Fezon was aſſured unto Orſon, the night approached,

ed, and every man betook him to his reſt: Amongſt the reſt Valentine and Orſon were lodged moſt richly in a goodly Chamber, and in the dead time of the night Valentine had the apparition of an

Angel appeared unto him, ſaying; Valentine (know this) that in the morning thou ſpeedily depart this Land, & take along with thee Orſon, by whom the Green knight hath been vanquiſhed, and without further delay, get thee into the Caſtle of Ferragus, there you ſhall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou ſhalt underſtand of whence thou art deſcended.

This ſtrange Viſion drave Valentine into a thouſand fears, & in great mellancholly paſſed he away the night: The day being broken, he cauſed Orſon to ariſe, and being ready, they both haſted them unto the Dukes Palace, where he found his Barrons attending on him, and amongſt the reſt there preſent, the Green knight. Not long after entred the Duke, being entred, the Green knight took an occaſion to gibe him the time of the day, and began to ſpeak unto him on this manner: Moſt renowned Duke, I freely confeſs my ſelf vanquiſhed, and

and withal renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlaſting peace with you, upon condition that you cauſe me to be Baptized. Knight, ſaid the Duke, well have you ſaid, I grant your requeſt. When the Prieſt was come that ſhould baptize him, Valentine being preſent, began thus to ſay: Lords, and the reſidue here aſſembled, may it pleaſe the valiant Duke to grant me one boon, which is this, that the name of this Knight be called Pepin, it is the name of the moſt mighty King of France, that nouriſhed and foſtred me even from my Cradle. The Duke conſented unto Valentines demand, ſo he was called Pepin; after the Baptiſm, the Duke made a motion to Valentine and Orſon for to Wed his Daughter, the beautious Lady Fezon, but Valentine not allowing thereof, made this excuſe, that both he and Orſon had vowed to go to Jeruſalem, e're they did attempt any other action, after the conqueſt of the Green Kt.

The Duke hearing this excuſe, gave them leave, upon this condition, that Orſon ſhould take an Oath to return again into Aquitain, at his coming back from thence: to this they both agreed. The ſame hour alſo, the Green Kt. took leave of the Duke of Aquitain, and went his way into France, to keep his promiſed fairy to King pepin. Before his departure, Valentine asked him for the Ring that he had promiſed, who gave it unto him, ſaying: Whatſoever he be that beareth this about him, ſhall never ſtand in fear of Drowning, nor be afraid of falſe accuſation. Then Valentine took the Ring and put it on his finger: ſo Orſon and he took leave, and departed the way toward the Lady Clerimond, to find out the Caſtle of Ferragus: and the Green Knight likewiſe took leave for France, to yield himſelf to King pepin. Much about this time Blandiman, Squire to the diſtreſſed Lady Belliſant, was arrived at King pepins Court, clad in the habit of a Pilgrim, and having ſaluted the King, he wondred at his his unlookt for ſhape, & at laſt asked him from what Sepulchre he was come. Worthy King (ſaid Blandiman) I am no Pilgrim, although I have taken that ſhape upon me, but only to come more ſafely unto you have I betaken me to this habit: wherefore know, that I am a Meſſenger ſent from the high and mighty Lady your Siſter, that by treaſon and falſe accuſations hath been baniſhed her Country by the Emperor Alexander, and at this time liveth in great ſorrow of heart, only for that you have unjuſtly bent your heart againſt her, and ſought no way to relieve her miſery.

CHAP. XXV.

How King *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*: and how the Green Knight submitted himself, according to his promise made unto *Valentine*.

BLandiman having delivered his Message, the King began to demand of him where his Sister was? Blandiman replyed, I know right well where she is, but I have given her my word never to discover it to any. But worthy King, if you make doubt of her loyalty, I shall bring you a man that will fight the quarrel, to prove her Honest. Nay (qd. the King) I have seen tryal enough thereof already, by the downfal of the Arch-Priest, also I have made much means to hear of her, but cannot hear any tydings of her; and indeed that which most grieveth me, is, that she was great with Child when she was repulsed the Kingdom, neither am I assured, whether ever she was delivered of that burthen. My Lord, (qd. Blandiman) know this for a truth, that my Lady laid her great Belly in the Forrest of Orleance, and whilst she dispatched me to get her the help of a Woman, e're I could return, she was delivered of two faire Sons, the one of which was carried violently from her by a Bare into the Wood, she never wist whither, but she followed the Bare so long, till at last I found her in a dangerous sound upon the ground. I coming to her, took her up in my arms, & comforted her so well as I could, till being somewhat recovered, in woful Sighs she unfolded unto me the whole manner of the loss of her Child by the Bare: and for the other she had left it under the Tree; I hearing her say so, hasted towards the Tree whereas I left her, but being come thither, I could not find the other Child neither. And thus (worthy King) have I related unto you the whole story of your Sister and her two Infants in the Forrest: & other tydings have I none, but this, that I am the Blandiman that you gave unto your Sister to attend her, when she married the Emperor Alexander. The King hearing this Tale, at last said: Alas Blandiman, thy words strike me into a Thousand fears, what should be become of my Sister: but seeing thou canst tell

no

no more, tell me yet how long ago this is that thou hast told me. My Lord (qd. he) it was even that day you met me in the Forrest of Orleance, and I related unto you the piteous tydings of your Sisters banishment. This struck the King into such an admiration, that he began to recollect his wits, and then presently came into his mind the finding of Valentine in the Forrest, and how by the same Valentine, Orson was conquered in the same wood. Then he began to think on the story that Blandiman had told him, and thereby knew that these were the two Babes brought forth by his Sister, wherefore he sent for the Queen, and other Ladies, to let them understand what Blandiman had declared, saying: My Lords, I have long time nourished & brought up in my Court two poor Children; and now it doth plainly appear they are Sons to an Emperor, & my near Kinsmen: Valentine the one, whom I found in the Forrest of Orleance, brought forth there by my Sister Bellisant, in the time of her exile; and Orson who was likewise vanquished by Valentine, to be his Natural Brother, & both Sons to the Emperor of Greece. At these tydings all the Court was wondrous joyful, save onely Hanfray and Henry, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their hearts very sorrowful, for above all other they desired the death of Valentine, that next him they might work their wills on their younger Brother Charlemain, against whom they chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will more plainly appear.

But to return back again to Blandiman, who hearing the King speak so much of the two Children, demanded of the K. if he knew in what Country they were: Why (said the King) one of these I have brought up in my Court along time, in such Fashion, that he is become a right Valiant Knight, and by his Valour hath Conquered his Brother, being a Wild-man, Living in the Wood at Orleance like a Beast, and one that did much Damage to all the Country thereabout. Having conquered him, he brought him to my Court, where having lived some small time, they both departed, and took their way towards Aquitain, to fight with a right Worthy Champion, called the Queen Knight, and since their departure I never heard what became of them. Sir, said Blandiman, according to the Tale you have told, I remember well, that near Aquitain I met two such, but I am troubled that I knew them not. So the

King musing at these accidents, caused Blandiman to be highly feasted, and held as a companion amongst his other Lords.

Now it hapned, that on the same day the Green Knight (of whom we have before made mention) arrived at paris at the Kings Court: as soon as he came into the presence of the King, he saluted him with great reverence. The King seeing him all in Armour, marvelled much thereat, and at last demanded the cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came: The Green Knight replyed again on this manner: Honourable King, know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am that Knight that for the love of the Lady Fezon, daughter to the Duke of Aquitain, have for one whole year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my subjection, and having him thus under me, I took a Truce with him for six months, upon these Conditions; that if within that time he found not forth a Knight that by force of Arms should conquer me, I was to have his Daughter Fezon to Wife: On the other side, if I were conquered, I should remove away my siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing any further Damnage. So it is, that a long time I was fought withal, by divers valiant Knights of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endured death, and were still hanged upon a Tree; At last it so fell out, that there assailed me two worthy Knights, the one named Valentine, and the other Orson. Valentine fought with me one whole day, wherein he bore himself so bravely, that Night coming on, we were forced to give over, all astounded, eyed, and weary; The next morning when the Battle should be again renewed, his Fellow Orson, armed in Valentines Armour, entred the Field in most fierce and disdainful manner, offering me Defiance; I scorning any Competitor, addressed out my self against him, but little availed my strength, for in the end he overcame me, and would have taken away my life, had not Valentine come in upon us, and rescued me, upon Condition: First, that I should forsake Mahomet: Secondly, that I should come unto you, and yield my self at your commands, and to stand to your censure either in life or death. Again, when I received Baptism, he caused me to be called Pepin, and so is my name.

The King having heard all this long story from the Green Knight made

made this answer in the presence of all the Barrons: Welcome to us, and of your Company we are right glad, live with us in our Court, and be jocond, for I freely grant you your like, and promise you further, that if you will tarry with us in our Country, I will endow you with many fair Lands and Possessions. The King shewed himself thus gracious, demanding of him where these Knights were, that had conquered him: Marry (qd. the Ezan Kt.) I left them both at Aquitain with the Valiant Duke Savary, who holdeth them in as great respect as any that are remaining in his Court.

Thus you may now perceive, that by the words of Blandiman & the Ezan Kt. King Pepin had perfect intelligence of his beautious Sister, and his two valiant Nephews. After all these tydings happned, King Pepin made a solemn Vow, that he would go himself in person into Greece, to tell the Emperor of these gladsome tydings, and to take order to send abroad into all Lands to find her out.

CHAP. XXVI.

How King *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to bear these tydings: and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Souldan, who had beleagured *Constantinople*.

KIng Pepin having put himself in a readiness to depart into Greece, went forth, and before much time was spent, he arrived at Rome. The Pope hearing of his approach, received him with great honour, and much Feasting. Upon a day, as he sat at Dinner with the Pope in his Palace Pontifical, there came tydings unto him, that the great Soldan of Ægypt had belleged Constantinople. The Kt. that brought this message, after his salutations ended, began thus to proceed: Holy Father, the Sarazens with much power have belleged, and wrongfully over-run Constantinople, and I am charged to crave your aid against these enemies of Christendom. When the Pope understood these ill-welcome tydings, he was driven into a wondrous dump, not knowing any present way to send them relief: but King pepin being in presence, comforted him greatly, and said: Holy Father, take no care for this business, for I request but a Competent Sum of Money and Men, and I shall lead them to Constantinople with such a Courageous heart,

heart, that I shall put the Soldan and his forces to the worst, such an inveterate hatred bear against these Pagan Devils. The Pope hearing him so resolute, thanked him for his courageous heart, and said unto him: Right Christian King, seeing thou dost proffer thy self in person to undertake this Service, I shall with all convenient speed provide for a business of such import. Presently hereupon all things being prepared, with an Army of Thirty thousand Romans, King Pepin departed, and as soon as possible he could, he arrived at Constantinople. Being thither come, he found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great fear of the Soldans Army, betaking themselves into the City, keeping the same against all the force of the Pagans.

The Emperor himself was forced to retire into the City, and being cooped up in so small a Compass, his troubled thoughts evermore ran upon the Lady Bellisant, whom he had cruelly Banished, always fearing that she was dead, for it was now full twenty Winters past, since the time of her exile. By this time is King Pepin come within two miles of Constantinople, and there landed his men, raising Pavillions, pitching of Tents, and ranging his forces into battel-array. The Soldan having knowledge of his arrival, and also of his provision, was much abashed thereat, and with all diligence returned to his strong Pavillion, and being set down in his magnificence, there came unto him certain of his Camp, fearfully and doubtfully, saying thus unto him: Great and mighty Soldan, we come to give you true intelligence, that there is lately arrived to the number of two hundred thousand Romans, to aid us present battel, under the conduct of Pepin King of France: Wherefore it only resteth now, that you take sudden advice how to prevent and resist these Forces: Peace foreseth Owls (qd. the Soldan) be not afraid, for you are deluded by some false report, the whole Roman Nation is not able to furnish forth such an Army. Go on I say courageously, for I swear by Mahomet, e're long I shall bring under my subjection, both the Kingdom of Rome and France also: wherefore call up your troops, plant them, & put your squadrons in readiness to receive them.

The morrow following, King pepin set his Army in order of Battel, fiercely to assault the Pagan Host, and secretly sent a Letter to the Emperor, being in the City, whereby he requested the Emperor, that

that they within the City ſhould put themſelves in readineſs, and to iſſue out upon the Pagans on that ſide; for King *Pepin* and his companies would receive them on the other ſide, when being all encompaſſed about, there was hope to get the day of the Sarazens.

The Emperor received theſe Letters joyfully, & did as King Pepin commanded them, & ſtood forth of the City, bidding battel to the Sarazens. They were no ſooner entred the field, but they perceived the Army of King Pepin marching on with Banners diſplayed, and noiſe of Trumpets ſounding in moſt courageous manner. This made the Pagans to look about, and the Soldan calling to him two of his hardieſt Men of War, commanded them ſecretly to go through the Hoſt of the Chriſtians, and if it were poſſible, to number them. Theſe two did as the Soldan commanded, but being come near the Hoſt of King Pepin, the Queen eſpying them coming down a little Hill; drawing ſomewhat nearer, he deſcerned they were Sarazens, and preſently putting ſpurs to his Horſe, ran againſt them with ſuch fury, that his ſpear brake upon his thigh: the Sarazens ſeeing him run ſo fiercely, did not flye, but received him valiantly, as hereafter followeth in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXVII.

How the Green Knight juſted againſt the two Sarazens, and having ſlain the one, the other fled: and how K. *Pepin* and his Hoſt was lodged within *Conſtantinople*.

The Green Knight having recovered a new Spear, he ran fiercely againſt both the Sarazens, and hitting one of them in a very dangerous place ſmote him to the Earth, ſo that he never roſe, then making againſt the other, he gave him ſuch a wound that he ſuddenly fled away; King *Pepin* ſeeing this accident, preſently aſſailed the Soldans Hoſt, and Myllon Daugler ſlew the King of Aquile, and three other: ere he gave over the Field, with many and diſcous other worthy deeds of Chivalry: The Soldan ſeeing him ſo play the Devil in his Hoſt, cryed out, to follow Daugler that had made ſuch haboch: So they did as he commaned, purſuing him ſo cloſe on both ſides, that at length they cut off one of his Horſes

thighs,

thighs, forcing him to fall upon the earth, and had there periſhed, had not the Green Knight (maugre all the Sarazens) thruſt himſelf into the Preſs, ſlaying and beating down as many as made any reſiſtance, and in the end ſo relieved Daugler, that he freſhly horſed him, and brought him clean out of Danger. After this they both joyned together in ſuch furious out-rage, that they ſpared none that came in their way. Fierce was this Battle, and endured long, but King Pepin and his men made great ſlaughter amongſt the Pagans: but notwithſtanding all this their valour, they had loſt the day, had it not been for the Emperor, that with his Hoſt valiantly aſſailed the Pagans on the other ſide, and made amongſt them a bloody ſlaughter. The King ſeeing the courage of the Emperour ſo great, gathered together again his ſcattered troops, and entred into the Battle again with great fury, and now were the Pagans begirt round about. As ſoon as the King came unto the ſight of the Emperor, he ſaid unto him: Great Prince, ſhew thy ſelf right valiant, & this day, e're night, I ſhall tell thee tydings of the Lady *Belliſant*.

Theſe words added freſh courage unto the Emperor, who cryed out to his men: Courage for Conſtantinople, and he that wins honour ſhall be richly rewarded. And with theſe words entred into the thickeſt of the Battle; where he, King Pepin, and the Green Kt. ſo valiantly behaved themſelves, that which way ſoever they turned, they made way before them.

Now began the Sarazens to doubt whether they ſhould ever eſcape away alive, & therefore fearing the worſt, betook themſelves to flight: But their flight being eſpyed by the King of Sclavonia, who led the Rear-ward of the Soldan, preſently ruſhed in with his Troops, conſiſting of fifty thouſand fighting men, making withal ſo great a ſhout that it ſeemed by the ſound thereof their part got the better. The Emperor and the King perceiving their coming, wiſely conſidered that their men were tyred and out-worn, and the Enemy freſh and luſty, ſounded a Retreat, and Retired themſelves and all their Souldiers into the City. The Soldan ſeing this, followed upon them, and ſtrongly beſieged the City round about, ſo that neither the Emperor nor the King could iſſue out thereof. Thus they abode till they were well nigh famiſhed, thinking thereby utterly to overthrow the Chriſtians. So leave we them, and return to Valentine & Orſon, who for

the

the love of Clerimond, have adventured, as you have already heard.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle, wherein fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen-Head they had knowledge of their Parents.

After many days travel, at last Valentine & Orson lighted upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle strong & impregnable, the covering wherof was of shining metal, glittering in the Sun, that it drave Valentine into suspition that it was it, whereunto the Green Kt. had directed him to have a sight of the fair Lady Clerimond. At all adventures he maketh way towards the Castle, & at last entred into this Island by one of the Ports therof. Being entred, he demanded who was the owner of that Castle which appeared so sumptuous to the eye? Answer was returned, that the Castle was in the keeping of the fair Lady Clerimond, after unto the Gyant Ferragus, and builded by a mighty man in substance, a Sarazen, the which Sarazen, amongst all other his excellent works done in this Castle, he caused one chamber to be richly adorned: of the which Chamber more shall be spoken of in its place.

Moreover, it was told unto Valentine amongst other things, that in the Chamber stood an excellent Pillar made by Art, upon the which Pillar stood a Head of Brass, compoled a long time before, by the Negromancy of a Fairy, the which Head was of such an excellent composition, that it gave answer to any thing that was demanded: Valentine hearing this strange Relation of the Castle, was right glad, for now he was certain, perswaded that this must needs be the very Castle he had so long time sought, & wherein the Green Knight told him he should find his Sister, in singular praise of all Nations for her excellent beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left questioning any further, & went on his way accompanied with Orson to see if he could get entrance into the Castle. By this time they were come to the gates therof, where thinking to enter, they were resisted by ten fierce Britains, that kept the Gate night and day.

When they ſaw *Valentine* and *Orſon* make proffer to enter, they ſaid unto them: Lords, or whatever you be, withdraw your ſelves back, for into this Caſtle entereth none, of what birth ſoever, without the leave and licence of a Woman, to whom we (as Guard) do appertain. Why (quoth *Valentine*) go tell her, and aſk whether it be her pleaſure we enter or not? Hereupon one of them entered the chamber where fair Clerimond was, and kneeling unto her ſaid: Lady, before your Gate ſtandeth two Gallants, that would enter your Caſtle, they ſeem fierce and courageous, full of high ſpirit, and men far diſagreeing from the Laws & Religion of our Country: Now fair Lady ſay, ſhall they have entrance? Defend (ſaid the Lady) while I go forth into a Window to take a view of them, and let the Gates be ſtrongly kept, for I mean to queſtion with them my ſelf. The Porter did as he commanded, then Clerimond that was well languaged, leaned out of a window, upon a Cuſhion covered with gold, and ſaid unto Valentine: What are you, that dare offer to enter my Caſtle without leave? Lady, (ſay. Valentine with an undaunted courage)

I am a Kt. that trabelleth this way, and would gladly ſpeak with that Head of Brals that remaineth within this Caſtle, if it be your pleaſure, becauſe (as I underſtand) it reſolveth doubts. Knight, qd. the Lady, upon theſe terms you may not enter; but if you can bring me any certain ſigns from one of my Brethren, either from King Ferragus, or the Green Kt. Lord of Tartary, then you may freely enter this Caſtle; or by no other means yet you may enter, that is, by the Seneſchal of this place, with whom you may run ſix courſes with your Spear, to try your valour, wherefore now be adviſed, either fetch me ſome certain token from one of my Brothers, or try your fortune in ſingle combat, as I have told you. Lady, quoth Valentine, againſt your Seneſchal I dare adventure, for I had rather win my entrance by ponderous blows, than by entreats, and fawning ſpeeches. This choice choſe Valentine, rather than to be wan the Ring which he had brought along with him, given him by the Green Kt. to preſent to his Siſter Clerimond. The Lady ſeeing his reſolute hardneſs, ſuddenly fell in love with him, & preſently went into the Chamber where the Head of Brals ſtood, & ſaid unto it: what is that Kt. of courage that would ſo gladly enter this Caſtle? Lady, qd. the head, of that Kt. ſhall you know nothing, until ſuch time as you have brought him before me. Clerimond at this anſwer ſeemed very ſorrowful, for ſhe was greatly in love with Valentine.

CHAP. XXIX.

How (when as *Valentine* was before the Caſtle, talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*: And how he juſted for the entrance, and overcame the Seneſchal.

Clerimond pondring in her mind the words of Valentine, being overcome with affection, ſaid on this manner: Ah! Valentine is valourous, and beautiful, and if I have power over the Head of Brals, I ſhall never take other Husband than this Kt. Hereupon ſhe ſent for the Seneſchal, & told him, that this Kt. would enter the Caſtle. The Seneſchal thereat enraged, began thus: Lady, if he be ſo hardy to attempt it, I ſhall quickly make him know that he cometh too late to gain your love.

Seneſchal (ſaid the Lady) ſince it muſt be ſo, go arm you preſently,

and so he departed to put himself in Arms. Being armed, he mounted his Horse, couched his Spear in his rest, & withal issued out of the gate in readiness. The Lady also, got into a window to behold the Combat. When Valentine saw the Seneschal to come towards him, he couched his Spear, & putting spurs to his Horse, they met so fiercely, that their Speares brake in pieces: presently having a new supply, suddenly they met so fiercely, that they fell to the ground Horse and man: but Valentines Horse got up with his Master. Valentine being thus saved by his Horse, said unto the Seneschal: Rise up, and newly mount your self, for there is no honor in conquering an enemy at advantage; Whereupon the Seneschal was freshly mounted, and new Spears given them again: then took they a fresh Carear, & therewithal Valentine so encountred him about the head, that he bore away his helm, and threw both Horse and man down upon the earth: The Seneschal seeing himself in danger, said thus unto Valentine: Sir, I know not from whence you are, nor of what Parentage, but never

in my life found I a man of thy valour, wherefore I yield, & withal give thee leave to enter this Caſtle at thy pleaſure, (only upon this condition that you ſpeak not unto the Lady Clerimond without my leave.) Worthy Valentine thou haſt requeſted that which I will not grant, and know, it was for her love that I came hither, & though I never yet ſaw her, yet are my thoughts on fire. Therefore from hence I will never part till I have ſpoken with her, & alſo with the Brazen-Head. The Lady all this while ſtanding at the Window, wondered what conference paſſed between theſe two Champions, & at laſt thus ſaid unto one of her Maidens: See how indiſcreet this Seneſchal is, to fight with ſuch a valiant Kt. who long ſince might have taken away his life. When Valentine ſaw the great pride of the Seneſchal, & that he ſtood it out with him, being his Priſoner, he preſently run againſt him another courſe, & therewithal gave him ſo deadly a ſtroak, that he ran him clean through the body, ſo that he fell off his Horſe ſtark dead, at the which the Lady Clerimond was exceeding joyful, commanding them to ſet open the Gates, & that Valentine ſhould be brought up unto her in the great Hall. When that the Lady beheld Valentine well, ſhe came towards him, & ſaid unto him on this manner: Knight, you are moſt welcome, for I never ſaw a more valiant & couragious man all the days of my life: Enter my Caſtle, for it appeareth by your Valour & Chivalry, that you are deſcended from the Loins of ſome Royal ſtock. Lady, know this for a certainty, my name is called Valentine, a poor Adventurer, for neither my ſelf, nor this my Companion, never knew from what Stock we deſcended. He was nouriſhed by a Beaſt in the Forreſt, & lived their like a Wild-man, till when as I conquered him by my Sword; beſides, he never ſpake in his life more than you ſee at this inſtant. Wherefore Lady, thus far have I travelled to get knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the love of you, being ſo fair a Lady.

CHAP. XXX.

How *Valentine* ſhewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, which the Green Kt. gave him, and how he queſtioned with the Brazen-Head, which told him from whence he was deſcended.

VAlentine having purchaſed free entrance by overcoming the Seneſchal, at laſt he ſhewed the Ring that the Green Knight had

had given him, and smiling, delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the token, saying: fair Knight, had you shewed this Ring when your first craved access into this Castle, you had never endured the danger that you have now escaped: but sith it hath pleased you to try your valour, I cannot better commend you, than to admire your brave courageous heart. Whilst Valentine and the Lady were thus talking together, the Tables were spread, the Lady sat down, and Valentine was also placed just against her, in whom she took her greatest felicity, as he in her: Dinner being ended, Clerimond arose from the Table, and taking Valentine by the hand, said thus unto him: Sir, well have you purchased your welcome, deserving to enter into my privatest Chamber, and so you shall, even that Chamber wherein the Brazen-head standeth, the which head shall declare all that you can desire, and make no doubt but it will tell you most joyful tydings: wherefore both you and your Companion come along with me, for I gladly long to hear, as you desire to be heard. Hereat Valentine grew exceeding joyful: first, for that he should now understand that which he long desired to know: secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their way out of the Hall, she brought him into that Chamber: being come unto the door thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the Chamber door guarded on this manner: On the one side a grim, fearful, and ugly shapen Villain, strong and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his neck, which offered to make resistance: On the other side of the Chamber door stood a most fierce Lyon, these two continually kept the door, that none could enter in without the Ladies leave, or else fight with the Villain & Lyon. Valentine perceiving these two watchmen to make resistance, demanded of the fair Lady Clerimond the meaning thereof, who answered: These two you see here are to keep this Door, that none may enter without fighting with them; & that divers have perished in their presumption: And again, the Lyon is of such fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, unless the Son of a King, & to such she shews her self very loving:

Lady (qd. Valentine) happen what will, yet I mean to try my fortune with the Lyon, and by main strength caught him about the body, whereat the Lyon forsook him, and let him pass. Orso likewise assailed the Villain, and e're he could be ready to lift up his

Club

Club of Iron, he took him by the middle ſo ſtrongly, that he threw him againſt the wall, he took away his Club, & gave him ſuch a blow that he tumbled on the ground, & had it not been for the Lady Clerimond, he had ſlain him in that place. Being both thus banquiſhed, the Gate was opened, & they entred the Chamber, wherein they might ſee all the world could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Saphirs, with great multitude of pretious ſtones: within this Chamber were four Pillars of Jaſper, marvellous rich, of which two of them are yellow as moſt fine Gold, a third green, more green then graſs, a fourth more red than a flame of fire; between theſe Pillars was a Pretious Stone, called an Amery, more rich than the heart of man can deviſe; in the midſt of which ſtood a Head of Braſs, ſet upon a rich Pillar. Valentine wondring at the riches of theſe objects, fixed his Eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it would publiquely open concerning his Birth. At length, when every voice was ſilent, the Head began to ſpeak after this manner: Thou famous Kt. of Royal Parentage, art called *Valentine the Valiant*, of whom it may juſtly be ſaid, there was never the like appeared before me; thou art the Man, who of right ought to marry with the Lady *Clerimond*, thou art Son to the Emperor of *Greece*, and thy mothers Name is *Belliſant*, Siſter to King *Pepin* of *France*, who by wrong ſuggeſtions hath been baniſhed her Country, and Husbands Bed: know this, thy Mother is in *Portugal*, in the Caſtle of *Ferragus*, who hath had the keeping of her theſe twenty years: *Pepin* is thy Uncle, and the wild-man who hath ever accompanied thee, is thy natural Brother; you two were delivered by the Empreſs Belliſant, in the Forreſt of *Orleance*, and being brought forth, thy companion was taken away by a ravenous Bear, & by her he was nouriſhed in that Wood, amongſt the reſt of her Whelps, and never ſucked he any other: For thy part *Valentine*, thou waſt found the very ſame day in that Forreſt by King *Pepin*, who hath nouriſhed thee tenderly, and brought thee up to mans eſtate: Further, thus much I ſhall alſo tell thee, that this thy Brother here preſent, ſhall never have uſe of his Tongue, till a thread be cut under the ſame, and then thou ſhalt hear him ſpeak plainly. Therefore proceed as thou haſt begun and thou ſhalt proſper, for my time is at a Period ſith thou art come to enter into this Chamber.

Valentine marking well all that the Head had uttered, fell upon the bosom of his brother Orson, & Orson on his, & with kind embraces they counter-changed each other. The Lady seing all this, began thus to break out into speeches: Alas, courteous Kt. I of all other ought most to joy at this your happy arrival, for by you I am freed of seven years hearts grief, which I have hardly undergone hitherto. Again by this Brazen-Head I understand that you have ever been the Man on whom my affections should rest, & whereunto I gently agree (if you please) & take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady (qd. Valentine) I accept you as my wife, who was given to me by your Brother the Green Kt. that was banquished by my Brother Orson before the City of *Aquitain*; only this I shall request. That as your Brother the Green Kt. hath forsaken Mahomet, so you would do the like. Sir (qd. she) I shall gladly pleasure you in any thing you shall comand me, & be obedient to your will in every point, whilst you & I shall live. And so great joy betided all the Inhabitants of this Castle, for they were right glad of the tydings that the Brazen-Head had declared unto him. After this, the reputation of Valentine encreased more & more: but all his former joy & gladness was suddenly eclipsed by the Treachery of her Brother Ferragus, as hereafter shall be more fully declared.

CHAP. XXXI.

How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledg of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*, by the means of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter.

NOw shall you understand, that within this Castle where Clerimond was, dwelt a Dwarf (named Pacolet) which the Lady had nourished, & brought up of a Child bestowing much cost to have him taught in Schools. This Pacolet being of more Age than stature grew exceeding witty, and at last studied the Black Art, and therein grew so famous in Negromancy, that by Enchantment he had composed a little Horse made of Wood: in the head of which Horse, he had so artificially conveyed a Pin of wood, that every time he mounted on his back to ride abroad, he would turn the Pin toward the place he would go unto, & suddenly he would be in the same place without danger, for the Horse could run through the air swifter than any Bird.

This

This Pacolet being in the Caſtle, obſerved the behaviour of Valentine; and when he had fit time, he addreſſed himſelf for Portugal, to bear news to Ferragus, how all matters had paſſed at the Caſtle. So he betook himſelf to his wooden Horſe, and in a moment of time (ſetting the pin for that part) he arrived there, according to his deſired wiſh, and related the ſtory unto Ferragus. When Ferragus heard this Tale, he grew exceeding angry againſt Valentine, for that he ſhould have his Siſter in Marriage: Alſo, he grew enraged at her, that ſhe would grant her love unto him (being a Chriſtian Knight) ſwearing by his Gods to take revenge upon them both: But all this he diſſembled unto Pacolet, bidding him return and bear this meſſage to Clerimond, that the Kt. Valentine, who ſhall have her to wife, is right welcome, and that e're long I will come in perſon to viſit them, accompanied with a gallant troop of Nobles, and then ſhall their Nuptials be royally Solemnized: So Pacolet took leave and got him on his horſe, and was in an inſtant at home again. Being come, he preſently went into the preſence of the Lady Clerimond, and ſaid unto her: Madam, I have been in Portugal with your Brother Ferragus, who is glad of your choice with Valentine, and promiſeth e're long to be here in perſon, and to make a Royal Marriage. At this tale the Lady ſtood amazed, and at laſt began to anſwer him thus: Ah Pacolet, is this true that thou haſt told? Aye me, the Gods defend my Brother from plotting any treaſon againſt me, for I am well aſſured he could never abide a Kt. of France, nor any other that is a Chriſtian; I am right angry that thou didſt not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had a ſerious buſineſs for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a Chriſtian woman, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my Brother Ferragus, in the Caſtle that he now holdeth.

CHAP. XXXII.

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugal* to see the Lady *Bellisant*, *Valentine*'s Mother, his returning back, and the news that he brought.

The Lady having ended her tale, Pacolet made her this answer: Lady, seeing you are so earnest, I shall for your sake, make another journey into Portugal, and before to morrow mid-day I shall bring you tydings whether she be there or on. Valentine hearing him say so, replyed; That thou canst not do, except the Devil be in thee: The Lady Clerimond said unto Valentine: Let him alone, for by art he hath provided, that he will ride more than a thousand miles a day. Hereat Valentine marvelled much, and calling Orson unto him, he cut the Thread from under his Tongue, that bridged his speech, which being done, he spake presently, where he entered the Ring of his life led in the Forrest, which held them the

moſt part of that evening. On the morrow, according as Pacolet had promiſed, he was found in the Hall before Valentine, ſaying unto him on this manner: Sir, I am returned from Portugal, and have ſeen your Mother in good health: Friend (quoth Valentine) thou art right welcome, for it is the I only deſire to hear of. Lobe (qd. Clerimond) be not too haſty, for if my Brother come not hither, we will go into portugal to him, and then we ſhall have both our hearts deſire. May ſurely (qd. pacolet) your Brother will come hither: I (qd. the Lady) but I ſtand in fear of him, leſt that he work ſome Treaſon againſt us; for this laſt night I dreamed a fearful dream, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: I dreamed I was in a great water, in the which I ſhould have periſhed, had it not been for a great Lake that drew me out thereof; being out, methought I ſaw a Griffin iſſue out of a Cloud, who with his Pallons took me up, and carried me I know not whither. Lobe (qd. Valentine) give no reſpect at all to dreams, for they be but delufions of a melancholly mind. 'Tis true (qd. ſhe) but they trouble me every night. Having ended this diſcourſe, they entred into a fair Arbor, garniſhed with great varieties of Flowers, repoſing themſelves ſome few hours in long dalliance, where we will leave them, and you ſhall hear that the ſame day arrived Ferragus the Traytor, at the Caſtle of Clerimond.

The Lady hearing of his coming, preſently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and ſaid unto her; Siſter, above all creatures living, I have moſt deſired to ſee you, tell me, I pray you, which is the Knight you mean to make your Husband? This, fair Brother, is the man. Whereupon Valentine ſaluted him with great reverence. Ferragus ſaid unto him; Fair Knight, ye be welcome into theſe quarters, for the love of my Siſter Clerimond; for ſeeing it is ſo fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the Green Knight, and ſent him into France, cauſing him to be Chriſtened, even ſo have I a great deſire to be Baptized, to become a Chriſtian, and follow your Religion.

Valentine believed all theſe words which he had ſpoken; but under theſe fair promiſes he ſmothered Treaſon; yet at laſt Valentine began thus to ſay unto him: Sir, it is reported to me, that within your Caſtle, for the ſpace of theſe twenty years, you have maintained

a Christian Woman, who is Mother unto me, whom I would gladly see, her name is Bellisant, Sister to Pepin King of France, and Wife unto the Emperor of Greece. By Mahomet, said Ferragus, you say truth, and to the end your eyes may behold her, you shall go along with me into portugal, so shall you rightly be informed whether she be the Lady you seek for, or no; Gramercy (qd. Valentine) and so Ferragus left him, and said unto his Sister Clerimond after this manner: Sister, my souls joy, I desire your advancement more than any thing on earth, and am glad you have found out so worthy and valiant a Knight for your Espousal; wherefore to knit up all at once, my desire is, that you would go with me into Portugal, and there with the consent and applause of all my Nobles, we intend highly to Solemnize your Nuptial-day.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* were betrayed by the Treachery of *Ferragus*; and how he committed them to prison, with their Woful Lamentations.

FErragus having thus gotten their good wills to depart for *Portugal*, put all his Ships in a readiness, and packing up all their provision, they put forth to Sea. Being now at Sea, Ferragus fell from all his former words of comfort, and began to plot the death of Valentine and Orson. In the dead time of the night, when the two Brethren were at rest in their Cabins, he caused them secretly to be taken forth of their beds, and committed them to bands, muzling their eyes also, that they could not see: Now, when Clerimond saw what was done to her love, she fell into an extream agony, and with watry eyes began thus to vent her lamentations: Alas dear Valentine, our joys are suddenly turned unto sorrow; thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, when thou art not only thus misused, but even in danger of thy life: Cursed be the day of my birth, for with much danger hast thou purchased my Love. Alas, alas, what shall I do? rent heart, weep forth my eyes, when such a valiant, hardy, and most magnanimous Knight must be thus tortured for my sake: Thou hast deceived the trust I put in thee, by working so foul an Act against my Love:

Love: thou hast robbed me of all joy, and brought upon me an untimely death. Further, know this, that if you put to death these two Knights, you carry to your grave the name of a Villain. Let them alone, their death will work you small content: or if there be no remedy, spare them and seize first upon me, and cast me into the Sea, for I would not live to see such two Innocents falsly put to death without desert. Yea; even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with very hearts sorrow, she would have slain her self, or else violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate fit, gave strict command that she should be well attended by some of his Barons, and especially that she should not so much as speak a word with either of the Prisoners; thus leaving her to her laments, and the Christians, both Valentine and Orson fast bound in bands. Valentine perceiving himself thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard hap: Alas, quoth he, how contrarily hath fortune dealt with me? I have spent all my youth in travel and danger, only to find out the Parents that begot me; and see now when hope had well nigh set an end to all my sorrows, I am unhappily fallen into the hands of mine enemies that only seek my death. Alas Brother Orson, how suddenly are all our joys blasted, and our mirth turned into mourning? On this wise complained Valentine and Orson, but all this while are they on their way towards portugal, and shortly after arrived at the Castle of Ferragus. Being there arrived, tydings was brought to the Lady Bellisant, that two Christian Knights were come along with them as Prisoners: at which news she quickly left her Chamber, and came to have a sight of them. When she was come near unto them, and had well reviewed them, at last she said thus unto them: Children (quoth she) of what Country be you, and where were you born? Lady (quoth Valentine) we be of France, and born not far from paris: Ferragus perceiving the Lady to speak unto them, sharply rebuked her, saying: Lady, leave your questioning, for except they renounce their faith, they shall miserably end their days in Prison: and therewithal called unto him a Jaylor, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept only with bread and water. This misery was not sufficient, but more than that, certain churlish Sarazens standing by, smote these two Children with their fists and staves.

After

After Ferragus had committed them, he got him up into his Palace, and called for his Sister Clerimond unto him; when she came before him, she could not forbear tears, which made him thus say unto her: Sister, leave weeping, for I swear by Mahomet, you have too long doted upon the Brazen-Head, as well appeareth, in that you make your choice with one of a contrary Religion: but change your mind, for it is a shame that you should first take him to Husband, that hath been the overthrow of our Brother the Green Knight; next a Christian, whom our Laws do abhor. Forbear (I say, therefore) and be ruled by my direction, and I will raise your Fortunes, by matching you unto that Puissant King Trompart. Forget I say, these two Frenchmen, for shortly thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the head: Brother, (qd. Clerimond) it behoveth me to obey you; for I plainly see I must let go the thing I cannot have, for whereas force constraineth, fear hath little power, and necessity often preventeth truth. These Discourses finished, Ferragus departed with his Queen and other Attendants, and entring the great Hall, with very much honour and reverence they received the Lady Clerimond, the Queen thus saying unto her: Sister, Welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight of you. Lady (quoth Clerimond) I give you Millions of thanks, but know this, that I am right heavy and sad for two Christian Knights that are come hither, under colour of friendship and love, brought over by my Brothers fair promises, and now to be violently handled, as to be thrown into a Dungeon, and also threatned to death. This Sister, even this, wounds my Soul, and splitteth my very heart in sunder. Alas Sister, pitty me, for one of these Knights should be my Husband, amongst all men living; he is the comliest, valiantest, and hardiest Knight that liveth upon the face of the earth. Again (dear Sister) by force of arms hath he conquered his Foe, and won my love; wherefore, Lady, pitty my distressed estate, and let me see that Christian Lady, which you have so long kept within this Castle. Sister (said the Queen) I shall gladly consent to your desire herein; and so bringing them together, the Lady Bellisant said thus unto her: Lady, what is your will with me? speaken, for I would gladly hear any thing you have to say. Then thus, I bring you joyful tydings, and yet the end of my tale will

be

be as ſorrowful, as the beginning is joyful: Know this, that I am not ignorant of your eſtate and dignity; for you are Sister to Pepin K. of France, & Wife unto the Emperor of Greece, who wrongfully baniſhed you his Country: Soon after your exile you were in your travel delivered of two fair ſons in a Foreſt, one of which was taken from you by a Bear, & the other you loſt you know not how. All this is true. May Lady, your Children are both alive, & I can tell you where to find them. At these words Bellisant fell into a ſwound for joy; Clerimond quickly recovered her again, & then the Lady ſaid unto her: Fair Damſel, how came all theſe things to your underſtanding? Then Clerimond related the whole ſtory, how Ferragus her Brother by ſubtilty & treaſon had put them into a Dungeon. Bellisant hearing her two Children were impriſoned by Ferragus, made great lamentation, inſomuch that the Wife of Ferragus entred the Hall, to underſtand the cauſe of theſe mournful clamours; Clerimond told the Queen all, from point to point: Well (ſaid the Queen) be appeaſed, & diſſemble the cauſe from the K. for if he have any knowledge thereof, it will make him rather ſo much the worſe, than better affected, either to them, or you.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How *Pacolet* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.

AS theſe three Ladies were conferring about this matter, into the Chamber came Pacolet the Dwarf, that was now come from his Wooden Horſe. When Clerimond ſaw him, ſhe wept bitterly, and ſaid: Alas Pacolet, what injury have I done unto thee, that thou ſhouldeſt thus rob me of all my joys at once, for I am well aſſured that thou mighteſt have given me warning of all theſe miſeries. Lady (ſaid Pacolet) be not ſo highly diſpleaſed at me, for I proteſt I am ignorant of all that hath befallen you; but ſeeing you have begun theſe bitter bickerings, I ſwear my Art ſhall utterly forſake me, but I will find a remedy for you to avenge your ſelf, and to that purpoſe, I here bow all my ſervice unto you, and Valentine, while life doth laſt. Friend (ſaid the Lady Bellisant) if thou canſt but free my two Children out of Priſon, I ſhall acknowledge my ſelf highly indebted to thee, & I will recompence thy labours every way. Lady

(ſaid

(ſaid Pacolet) no more take you care, but comfort your ſelf, & ere long you ſhall well perceive my crafty work to take ſuch effect by my Art, that you ſhall have cauſe to remember me while you have a day to live.

CHAP. XXXV.

How by Art *Pacolet* ſet free *Valentine* and *Orſon* from the Priſon of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and fair *Clerimond*.

IT chanced upon a day that Ferragus made a great Feaſt for all his Nobles, which day they paſſed in ſuch revelling and mirth, that the night growing late, they all betook themſelves to reſt. Being all at reſt, Pacolet was ſtill watchful to give the Ladies content, and coming to a great Tower, whoſe gates were braſs, and ſurely locked, by his enchantment the gates flew open, and he entred thereinto: Anon he came unto the door of the Priſon, where the Ladies two ſons lay bound, and as ſoon as he touched the door, the locks brake, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark dungeon, and hearing the door open, were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but preſent death; and at laſt Valentine began to weep, but Orſon ſaid unto him: Take courage Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for death: and ſith it is ſo, he that firſt entreth here, to lay hand upon me, ſhall dearly pay for his adventure: with that he laid hold of a great Iron Bar, that lay thereby; but at laſt Pacolet ſpake to them, ſaying: Lords, fear me not, for I am come to ſet you free from forth this Dungeon, wherefore make no noiſe, but follow me, and before the morrow Sun, I ſhall bring you both unto your Mother: Valentine at this ſpeech rejoyced greatly, but Orſon beholding him with an auſtere look, would not give any credit to his words. Pacolet at the fierce look of Orſon was much aſtonied, inſomuch that he gave back, but by the words of Valentine he was much reconforted, and Orſons fury aſſuaged.

After this, Pacolet led them to the Chamber whereas their two ſorrowful Ladies ſat in mournful tears. When he came unto the door of the Chamber, it was faſt locked, but he did eaſily open it. After they entred in, Pacolet ſo wrought with his charms, that all that

were

were thereabouts fell into a heavy and dead ſleep, and knew nothing of their coming. Being in the Chamber wherras the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but ſhe ſuddenly fell into a ſwoond, ſpeaking unto them never a word: but the Lady Clerimond pitiouſly ſaid thus unto Valentine: Alas (fair Knight) this is the Mother that bare you, who for the love and joy of you, is fallen into this grievous extaſie. Then Valentine embraced her, and took her up in his arms, and Orſon alſo claſped her about the middle, ſaying unto her; Sweet Mother, ſpeak unto me: and then he kiſſed her tender lips, but all this while ſhe ſpake never a word, but at laſt they all three fell flat upon the earth in a ſwound, and there lay panting for breath a long ſeaſon, while the fair Lady Clerimond ſtood over them, bewailing this ſtrange accident: At laſt, coming to themſelves again, the Mother ſaid unto them weeping; Alas my Children, for your ſakes have I ſuffered more pain and anguiſh than ever poor woman was able to undergo, and you two the only cauſe of theſe my doloyous paſſions, but ſith the Gods have ſo ordained that I may once ſee you, and embrace you before my death, all my griefs are banquiſhed, and become no burden unto me. But tell me, how have you been preſerved ever ſince your birth, and in what Country, and with whom you have remained? for it would glad me to hear the event thereof. At laſt (ſhe having ended her words) Valentine began the pitious ſtory of all their miſeries, even to that preſent hour. Valentine having finiſhed his ſad tale, by which the Empreſs Belliſant clearly knew that they were both her natural Children, wailing with many more tears than before, ſhe would fain again have fallen into a ſwound, but *Facolet* prevented her, who was at that inſtant in the Chamber, ſaying unto her: Lady, leave theſe laments, and let us think how we may depart from Portugal, and ſo rid us out of the ſubjection of K. Ferragus. Alas, ſaid Clerimond, my love, remember the oath that you made unto me, to make me your wife. Dear Lady (quoth Valentine) what I have promiſed I will perform, but at this preſent the love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me neer the heart.

Theſe words of Valentine being ended, Orſon ſaid unto Pacolet, Go open me the door of Ferragus, and with theſe hands I ſhall work his final downfal and overthrow. *Pacolet* anſwered, Come, go along with me, and I ſhall gladly open it, to fulfil this your deſire.

But know this, if you murther him, you shall lose the love of my Brother the Green Knight, who may divers and sundry ways do us displeasure. Lady (quoth Valentine) you say truth, and I agree unto this your wise and discreet motion: for I would not have you guilty of such a crime, as the death of this your brother for to gain the whole World.

At this very hour they departed the City, and Pacolet opened the Gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a Ship ready Rigged, and having a fair gust of Wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of Clerimond: whether being once come, they refreshed themselves with Pleasures.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus*, and sailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*.

VAlentine being come, and safely arrived at the Castle of Clerimond, could not so content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of Ferragus, fearing lest he should follow them, and put them into fresh dangers. Therefore to prevent all occasions of further mischief, he got him down unto one of the Ports, calling the Mariners there present, to victual their Ship afresh, and also provided good store of Munition to be in readiness upon all occasions. Having thus done, he returned again unto the Castle without any suspicion: being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother Bellisant, and the Lady Clerimond, saying; that he would suddenly depart for Greece, towards Constantinople, to see his Father the Emperor, who without any just cause had banished his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with Orson and Pacolet.

The next day they took Shipping, and went on their voyage, and at break of day, the Jayler, according to his accustomed manner, went to the Tower to visit the Prisoners, and to bear them their allowance of bread and water. Coming unto the Gates, he found them all open, and the Prisoners gone, he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him; Dread King, mercy; for this night I have lost the two Christian Knights that you had delivered to my custody. He had no sooner done speaking, but another Messenger appeared, and

and ſaid: O King a greater miſchief then this, is likewiſe hapned this night, for the Chriſtian Woman whom you have kept ſo many years, is this night eſcaped away, and hath carried along with her your Siſter Clerimond. Ferragus underſtanding theſe harſh tydings, all enraged, began to tear his hair, that he was as a Mad-man among his Barrons, and ſuddenly cauſing them to be armed, he made them to purſue and follow them; ſo he betaking him to his Club, iſſued out the foremoſt.

He was a mighty man, who was in ſtature about thirteen Foot in height. Being out of the Town, he calling his men about him, went forward to follow them that were eſcaped, letting none paſs he met withal, but he demanded tydings of them, yet he could not hear of them, for Pacolet by his Art was too ſubtile for Ferragus. At laſt, being tyred with purſuit, he ſwore that he would beſiege the Caſtle of Clerimond, for he did think aſſuredly to find her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus enraged, he ſwore by Mahomet, that he would either find Clerimond and all her company, or elſe he would ſhake all Chriſtendom, and ſo departed the Caſtle.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How King *Ferragus* aſſembled all his Men of War to take revenge upon *Valentine* and his Siſter *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitain*.

When Ferragus had long laboured, and could hear no tydings of the Chriſtians, and his Siſter Clerimond, he was grieved, and in his fury ſent for all his men of War, on every ſide, preſently to aſſemble themſelves to take Sea, and follow Valentine, to try if they could find him, and bring him back again. But when they had ſpent many days, and effected nothing, they returned every man to his home, and reſted from their fruitleſs Toyl. Whilſt Ferragus and his Forces were thus ſcowring the flowing Seas, Valentine and Orſon were entred the City of Aquitain: being there they diſſembled their Eſtate, and as Private Perſons Lodged in a Houſe of a Burgeis of the Town. Valentine

would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke Savary, but Orson thereunto would not agree; for he having a further reach of policy, said thus unto him: Brother, I find by small experience, that Women are unconstant, therefore hearken to my advice, let us only see and try how the Lady Fezon standeth affected towards me, and herein we shall try her constancy. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall right willingly agree hereto. Then Orson took upon him the habit of a Knight Errant, and entred the great Hall, taking Pacolet the Dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he saluted him with all reverence. The Duke observing well his behaviour, took it to be Orson that thus had demeaned himself; but after finding by his speech he was like to be deceived, he said: Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly adventure to do you service, in any manner you will imploy me. Knight (quoth the Duke) I accept your proffered service, and will give you sallary enough to content you, insomuch that if you will not depart my service before I give leave, I shall give you such riches, as all the stock you came from could never raise. Thanks great Duke (quoth Orson) for your liberal heart, and I here vow e're I depart, to deserve your love and liberality.

Hereupon the Duke requested him to visit his Court, and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in present pay, one Hundred and Fifty Pounds, making him withal a Companion for the Court. Orson thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himself worthy of this preferment, and ever so carried him at Meat, that every man delighted in his company. Amongst the rest, the fair Lady Fezon, that was sworn his Wife, grew wonderous heavy and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not that it was Orson whom she had beheld, and thus passed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, Orson took his leave for that time, and returned to his lodging, where his Mother and the Lady Clerimond had taken up their residence. Orson being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related to them the whole passage between him and the Duke; which when they heard they much rejoyced thereat: but this joy lasted not long, for there came suddain news, that Ferragus had sent Messengers to the Duke of Aquitain, to proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome news, presently provided both men and provision, to resist so proud an Enemy. Ferragus according

to

to his purpoſe, ſuddenly arrived before Aquitain, even in the very ſame place, whereas his Brother the Green Knight had pitched Pavillions, when that Orſon became his vanquiſher: by this means much hurt redounded unto the Country and Provinces thereabout whereas the Sarazens Army lay in readineſs, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to ſubdue, and over-run the whole Country before them.

Ferragus ſtill reſolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) the worthy Duke of Aquitain, being of a magnanimous courage, aſſembled all his men of War, and being thus put in a readineſs, he ſuddenly iſſued out of the Town, venturing to raiſe the Seige. Amongſt the reſt Valentine and Orſon made their appearance, being alſo accompanied with little Pacolet, but theſe three were not known unto any at that time: where we will leave them a little, to hear what followeth.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken priſoner in the battel by *Ferragus*, and how *Orſon* ſet him free by the help of *Pacolet*.

The Duke of Aquitain calling to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens, that lay before the City, valiantly reſolved to give them preſent battel the next morrow; ſo calling up all his Forces, and placing them in readineſs, there happened a bloody battel before the City of Aquitain, and many a brave Leader on both parts, there loſt their lives. The Gyant Ferragus himſelf was amongſt the thickeſt, gathering himſelf as near as he could unto his Standard-bearer. The chief men ſlain in this battel, were ſix valiant Knights, that is to ſay Baudumain, Bondry, William, Galeram, Anthony the good Marſhal, and Gloriam the hardy: all near about the Duke of Aquitain, and they that had the chief command throughout his Camp. This happening, the Chriſtians were [illegible] to fall back, whereby the Duke himſelf was begirt with enemies ſo that none might come to ſuccour him, yet in the midſt of all theſe dangers, he bare himſelf moſt Valiant, and ſtill cryed, Aquitain, Aquitain, my Noble hearts fight on for Aquitain: but in the end all little availed, Ferragus having once gotten a ſight of him, came near, and at laſt took him Priſoner, and led him to his Pavillion. Ferragus having thus beſtowed

bellowed the Duke, came up again to the Battel, which struck such an amazement into the hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the field, especially, because they had lost the Duke, their Lord and Master. Valentine and Orson seeing them thus to waver, came up with all the speed they could, and cryed out unto them with a loud voice: Valiant Knights, and Men of Aquitain, shew your selves Men, run not away in time of extremity, for if you do, lamentable will be your reproach: be hardy and courageous once again, and let us try the fortune of the day.

These two Knights having thus done speaking, the people began afresh to gather up their scattered forces, and turned their forces once more upon the Sarazens, with a double courage. By this time tydings was brought into the City that the Duke was taken prisoner, at which ill news the Lady Fezon lamented more then all the rest; saying with a heavy heart, shedding tears. Alas my Father, now is your life in hazard, for from these Sarazens there is no hope of any mercy. Farewel sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left as a dejected Orphan. Alas Orson my love, thy long and tedious staying abroad doth much distemper me; for if you were here present, there would be some hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, hewing forth his way with his sword. Orson on the other side, was not idle, for he had taken an Oath, that either he would free the Duke from Captivity, or leave his Body amongst the rest. Pacolet the Magician and Dwarf, promised Orson aid and assistance at need, and thus all busied, and nigh hand wearied, Orson put Spurs to his Horse, and ran violently thorow the Battel, and escaped: Orson and Pacolet being past danger, hurled away their own shields, and hanging about their necks the shields of the Sarazens, set forth with the Image of Mahomet in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite thorow the Camp of the Pagans, for Pacolet could speak their language right well) now are they come unto the Pavillion of Ferragus, where the Duke lay in bands, thinking to have released him; But Pacolet perceiving the number of his Guard to be too mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his Charms into a deadly sleep: Being thus made fast, he came unto the Duke, and said unto him: Come with us, e

presently

preſently mount this horſe, for we are come to ſet you free from the power of Ferragus; if you doubt what I am, I am the Knight, which in your Hall demanded Wages of you, and you allowed me liberally. Stand no longer to queſtion me, neither fear the power of all the Pagans here aſſembled, for I will ſurely be your guide through the Wicked rout. Knight (quoth the Duke) you are a welcome man to my diſtreſſed hands, and therefore for your dangerous enterpriſe, in working my deliverance, I ſhall give you my faire Daughter Fezon in Marriage. Indeed (I muſt confeſs) I have given her not long ſince to a Kt. but he was Wild and Savage, and he never had the uſe of his tongue; but by reaſon of his long abſence, I fear he hath won ſome other Lady, and left my Daughter husbandleſs; but to be ſhort, take her for this thy noble act, and with her I freely give the half of my Dukedom. Thanks, (quoth the Knight.) ſuch a gift is not to be refuſed; but let that paſs, and let us make ready for our eſcape, that we may return unto our diſcomfited Forces. Having thus ſaid, they all three took their way back again through the Camp of the Enemy, without diſturbance. All this while was Valentine in the Army demanding what was become of his Brother Orſon, but when he found no man that could tell him tydings of him, he grew wondrous heavy and ſad, fearing very much that he had been ſlain in the conflict of the battel.

Thus paſſed Valentine from place to place, to find out his Brother Orſon, and with a reſolute mind ruſhed afreſh into the Battel, and as a man diſtracted, he laid ſo forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to ſtand againſt him: Ferragus eſpying him ſo Valiant, came up to cloſe him, and having gotten him once in Chaſe, never left him, until he had ſlain his Horſe under him.

Valentine having thus loſt his Horſe, Ferragus ſeized on him as his Priſoner, cauſing him to be bound hand and foot, taking an Oath by Mahomet, that he ſhould not eſcape from Death, though there were not a man more to be had throughout the whole land; but this Oath was broken, for as he was leading his Priſoner Valentine faſt bound along the field, Orſon, Pacolet, and the Duke of Aquitain ſet upon him. Orſon crying out, Let him not eſcape us; and therewithal put ſpurs to his Horſe, and ran ſo fiercely againſt the Pagan Ferragus, that both he, and Valentine his Priſoner fell to the Earth.

The

The Gyant Ferragus quickly regained his feet, and left Valentine, who fearing, began to run away. Orſon eſpying him, cryed out, Brother, return again, and fear nothing: hereupon Valentine was new mounted: when the Chriſtians ſaw the Duke again at liberty, their courages increaſed, their forces doubled, and with joy of heart they cryed out aloud; Long live the Duke of *Aquitain*. This ſudden noiſe much amazed the Sarazens, inſomuch that Ferragus was glad to flee, and raiſe his ſiege: When the men of Aquitan heard the retreat, they recovered themſelves again into the City. The Battel being thus ended, Valentine and Pacolet returned to their lodgings, but Orſon went along with the Duke to his Palace, whither being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughter Fezon; being all aſſembled, he called Orſon unto him, demanding of him his Name? Sir, quoth he, I am called Gregory: Then ſaid the Duke thus before them all; Lords, I give you to underſtand, that above all men living, I am moſt beholding to this knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for our daughter Fezon, it is my pleaſure, that above all men you accept this knight for your Husband; Daughter, you have good cauſe to love him well, for by him I am made a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there aſſembled, agreed willingly hereunto, affirming, that ſhe ſhould do no leſs than to ſubmit to her Fathers Will, and the rather, conſidering the Dangers that by him had been prevented: Orſon hearing all this, ſtill concealed himſelf till he had further aſſayed the Conſtancy of the Lady Fezon; acquainting his Brother Valentine what he purpoſed to do, as enſueth in this next Chapter.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Orſon* tryed the Conſtancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he Married her.

ORſon having a deſire to try the Conſtancy of Fezon; at laſt replyed thus unto the Duke: Sir for the honour you have vouchſafed me, I reſt ever thankful for the ſame; but for your Daughter, it were moſt requiſite that I ſhould ſee how ſhe ſtands affected towards

wards me, and likewiſe fit for her to make choice of ſuch a man as is of equal birth with hers, & therefore if it pleaſe you, let her anſwer for her ſelf. With theſe words he entred into the chamber of fair Fezon, and ſitting down by her, he took her by the hand, and ſaid unto her: Lady, your beauty hath ſo enlarged my heart, that without your favour and love, I am an unfortunate man: Your Father is willing that I ſhall enjoy you, if you pleaſe ſo alſo, then may I juſtly haunt that I have won the faireſt Lady living, and will prove a conſtant knight whilſt I have breath; if you conſent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight (quoth the Lady) you ought to forbear, for all your labor is loſt: it is true, I love all knights; yea, all good men too, in the rule of honour, but as for him whom I mean to make my husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why? but fair Lady (quoth Orſon) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to pleaſe you: Sir (ſaid ſhe) it is reaſon that I obey my father, but if ſo be that my father will conſtrain me to break my faith, and forſake him that vanquiſhed the Green knight, I will rather leave my father, than once offer to break my faith. Lady (quoth Orſon) I wonder how you can ſet your affections on ſuch a man, for he is of a wild nature and diſpoſition; beſides, as your father reporteth, is dumb and cannot ſpeak a word: True (quoth the Lady) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithful affection, to whom my faith is already fixed; and therefore ſtay your Suite, for I will never alter nor change my mind from him.

Orſon hereat grew wondrous joyful to hear the wiſe Anſwer of Fezon, and took his leave of her, and came again to the Duke, ſaying; Great Duke, I am returned from your daughter, for ſhe hath given me an utter denial, ſaying; that ſhe will never have other husband than he that conquered the Green knight. Quoth the Duke, care not for her denial, for ſhe ſhall not rule her own will, but be you a little patient this day, and I will talk with her my ſelf. Thanks mighty Duke (quoth he) I am much beholding unto you, and ſo left the Court, and came to the Lodging of his brother Valentine, to whom he related the whole matter of his proceedings with the Lady Fezon. Brother (ſaid Valentine) you now know and find her faithful, but let us go together to the Palace, for I am aſſured the Duke

will give me good Entertainment. Sir, (ſaid Orſon) do as you pleaſe: Valentine clad himſelf in rich apparel, and Orſon put on nothing but the Jacket in which he firſt entred into Aquitain; and thus, accompanied with Pacolet, they went towards the Palace; and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his daughter, in the preſence of his Nobles, laying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to neglect my command thus, in rejecting the Knight, of whoſe love I have made ſufficient tryal, for he hath ſaved me alive? Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to ſolicite me no further in this matter, ſeeing you know aſſuredly that I have given my Promiſe to him that vanquiſhed the Green Knight: what greater ſhame can there be, than to break my Promiſe which I have made already? If by you I am conſtrained, the danger light upon you, only let me be innocent. As they were thus diſcourſing, the Duke eſpyed Valentine and Orſon coming towards him, whom he embraced and honourably entreated. Orſon having ſaluted the Duke paſſed towards the Lady Fezon, who received him with a ſmiling countenance, and ſaith thus unto him: You are welcome above all others, your long abſence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not come now in as you did, my Father had beſtowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth Orſon) I have learned to ſpeak ſince I was with you laſt, and am the very ſame Man that yeſterday courted you in your Chamber: all which pleaſed the Lady exceedingly. So Orſon went into a Chamber, and put on rich apparel: being thus attired, he entred the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming, embraced him kindly, and ſaid: Son, pardon my rathneſs, in that I would have given away thy Love to another, for I was full perſwaded that thou would'ſt never have returned. Sir (quoth Orſon) I forgive you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had ſpent their time, ſince their departure? Orſon told him their whole Progreſs, and what dangers they eſcaped, and withal, how they two were the Sons of the Emperor of Conſtantinople, and Belliſant, Siſter to King Pepin of France, whom they had lately found in Portugal. The Duke hearing that their deſcent was of Royal Blood, was right glad thereat, and ſaid: Knights, you are Worthy all Honour by reaſon of your birth, but I am ſorry that your Father the Emperor, and your uncle King Pepin, are ſo hardly beſieged by the Sarazens, and that unleſs ſpeedy

aid

aid be ſent unto them, they will be forced to yield themſelves. Valentine giving good ear unto this Relation, grew exceeding ſad, but Pacolet at laſt put him ſomewhat out of his dumps, and ſaid: Leave off your ſorrowing, for e're to morrow Night I ſhall ſend you to Conſtantinople; but, quoth Valentine, it muſt be then by the devils mean. Sir, ſaid Pacolet, mount you upon my wooden horſe, and try the event that will follow after. Valentine anſwered, that will I do, for I deſire nothing ſo much as the ſight of my Father, whom I never ſaw. Valentine on the Morrow prepared for to depart: but before his departure the Duke married his daughter unto Orſon, in the preſence of the Lady Belliſant, and the Lady Clerimond, with the conſent of his Nobles that were at the Wedding, where there was great Triumphs: and in this Aſſembly there was a Spy, who obſerved all the Proceedings, and gave intelligence thereof unto Ferragus. When Ferragus had received theſe tydings, he vowed by Mahomet to be revenged on them all, but eſpecially on Pacolet, for ſtealing away his Siſter Clerimond, whom he ſo much loved, and had ranked her among the Chriſtians.

CHAP. XL.

How *Ferragus* the Gyant ſtrengthned his Forces by the aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimain*.

FErragus being out of hope to get revenge on the two knights, and his Siſter Clerimond, called unto him a Meſſenger, and delivered to him divers Letters of State, eſpecially one of them was to king Trompart, of whom he deſired aid againſt his Enemies, all which, if he could ſpeedily accompliſh, he would give unto him for his Wife, his ſiſter Clerimond. At the farwell of his Letter, he deſired him to bring along with him the Enchanter Adrimain. Here leave we the Gyant, and return to Valentine, who by this time is taking his leave for Conſtantinople. But in the end he ſaid thus unto the Duke, and Orſon his brother: Lords, with you I leave my lovely Clerimond. Valentine (quoth the duke) take you no thought for her, for I ſhall have a fatherly eye over her, as well as I have over my Daughter Fezon.

Valentine having taken leave, at last came to Clerimond, who loath to part with him, wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leave her, and turning him to his brother Orson, said thus; Brother, commend me to my Father the Emperor, and to my Uncle King Pepin, and tell them, e're long I will visit them. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall remember you, and so departed. Orson still remained in the Palace, but Valentine had a duty yet more to do,; namely, to take his leave of his Mother; but when she saw him, she clasped him round with her Arms, but was not able to speak: Valentine perceiving her natural affection, recomforted her in the best manner he could, but all was in vain.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the pitiful Tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son, before his farewel to *Constantinople*, and what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.

VAlentine being overcome with the lamentations of his Mother, at last said thus unto her: O Mother, leave off, be not so careful for me, for if I escape danger, I shall gladly see you here again, in the mean space take care of my fair Clerimond, and let her be assured of my loyalty towards her. Alas, my Son, now will it come to light that I have been basely abused, and falsly banished my husbands Bed and Country, but yet do thus much for me, commend me to the Emperor, and also to my brother king Pepin, and say unto them in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be such a man breathing, that will but once open his mouth to the contrary, fight thou for me, and justly maintain my unspotted chastity. Mother (quoth Valentine) all this and more I shall perform, and ere many mouths have run their course, I shall cause my father to receive you again, and ask you pardon for his rash proceeding. So now he takes his last farwel of his dear mother, with this charge, that so soon as they were arrived, he should send Pacolet to bring tydings of all that had hapned.

Now taketh he his way to the Lodging of Pacolet, whither being come, Pacolet made ready his Wooden Horse, and mounting

Valentine

Valentine behind him, turned the Pin the ſame way he would take, and ſuddenly they were mounted in the Air ſo ſwiftly, that e're the morrow at noon, they were in the ſight of Conſtantinople. Valentine was wondrous joyful, that he was ſo near the place he ſo much deſired to ſee, and by the help of Pacolet the Enchanter, came that night even to the great Hall, where the Emperor accompanied with King Pepin, ſat both at Supper. Valentine being come into ſuch an unknown preſence, grew very bashful, but the Green Knight ſitting at the Table, with the Emperor and King Pepin, eſpyed Valentine, and knew him, ſo did king Pepin take knowledge of him likewiſe, ſaying thus unto the Emperor; Great Emperor, behold here one of our own blood, a valiant knight, and your own natural Son. The Emperor hearing this, was much amazed, and riſing from the Table, made towards him, and kiſſed him: The Green knight was the firſt that took him in his arms, and embraced him, then king Pepin next, and laſtly the Emperor his father, who was greatly aſhamed at his foul Fact, in baniſhing his unſpotted and guiltleſs Wife.

It chanced ſo likewiſe, that in this preſence was her old ſervant Blandiman, who well obſerved Pacolet, ever ſince he ſaw him in Portugal; and at laſt he went unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Miſtris, the Lady Bellyſant: Pacolet ſatisfied him in all his demands, ſo that exceeding great joy and gladneſs was heard about the City for the life of Valentine, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperors ſon, the valiant knight, Valentine ſeeing ſuch continual recourſe of all eſtates gathering about him, he ſaid unto them: Lords, Knights, and Barons here aſſembled, who ſeem well pleaſed to behold my perſon, I cannot yield unto you any other recompence but thanks, and eſpecially unto my Uncle King Pepin, who hath ever foſtered me, even from my Cradle; and had it not been for him, I had periſhed by reaſon of a ſharp Edict publiſhed by my Father, who, by the falſe ſuggeſtion of a dead Traytor, baniſhed my Mother from his Bed and Country: wherefore to clear her innocency, I (as her natural ſon) offer my Body in Combat againſt any falſe Traytor whatſoever.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

How *Valentine* and the Green Knight were taken Priſoners in the Battel of *Conſtantinople*, by the Souldan *Moradin* and his Men.

When the Emperor perceived his Son to be ſo much moved for the diſhonour which was done unto his Mother the Empereſs, he wept for very grief of heart, and ſaid thus unto his ſon: Alas my ſon, I have no doubt of thee to be my ſon, neither of thy manhood, in offering to revenge her wrongs upon the Traytor that accuſed her, but he is fallen already by the Sword of a Merchant, in the preſence of thy uncle Pepin, my ſelf, and divers others of high eſtate. At his death he confeſſed the whole Treaſon wrought againſt her, and ſince that time I have ſent divers and ſundry meſſengers into all Nations, to hear tydings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my deſired wiſh: therefore I pray thee, if thou canſt, tell me ſome glad tydings of her. Father (quoth Valentine) I know ſomewhat, for yeſter-night I both ſaw her, and ſpake with her in Aquitan; telling him beſides, that Pacolet the Enchanter had ſuddenly brought him thither by Art, rather than good ſpeed. The Emperor hearing ſuch gladſom news from his ſon, cauſed great Triumphs throughout the City of Conſtantinople. When the Sarazens heard ſuch ſhouts and revelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himſelf in a readineſs. The Souldan round begirt Conſtantinople, anguiſhing up all the Inhabitants moſt lamentable to behold. At laſt theſe tydings came to the Ears of Valentine and the Green knight, who arming themſelves came into the City, and ſaid: Lords, you well perceive the extremity in which we are; be yet courageous and ſtand to it, and there is hopes of recovery, wherefore follow my counſel, iſſue forth ſome number of you to forrage for ſome victuals, whilſt I, accompanied with 2000 men, ſet upon the Sarazens. They did as he adviſed them, and within ſhort time they behaved themſelves ſo valiantly, that they gained from the Enemy 300 Chariots laden with all ſorts of victuals. Having thus ſeized the victuals, they were conducting the ſame into the City, but the Souldan ſore vexed at his loſſes, got between the City and them, thinking to have defeated them from

from entrance, but King Pepin eſpying their policy, and how they had ſtopped up the paſſages, preſently couched his Spear, and ran upon the Souldan ſo violently, that he bare the proud Pagan to the earth, then pulling out his Sword at one Archillon, a very valiant Commander, with ſuch fury, that he ſtruk him out of his Saddle. Valentine and the Green Knight perceiving the great courage of King Pepin, and what fortune he had in the field, at that preſent entred freſhly into the Battel, and with a reſolute courage, even in the preſence of the Souldan, he hewed down the chief Standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being overthrown, Valentine addreſſed him againſt the Souldan himſelf, and with his Spear he ſo encountred him, that he ſo toſſed him, as he could ſcarcely ſit his horſe. Moroldas, one of the chief Commanders was ſlain, and his Admiral taken priſoner by the Green knight, with other Exploits performed on both parts. But mark what follows, theſe two knights were ſo Triumphant in their

uncertain

uncertain victory, that they pressed the enemy so far within danger, that when they would return, they could not, and so consequently were taken Prisoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Souldan.

The Souldan having gotten them in Bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his Mahomet, that they should never escape with life, but gave present commandment to raise up a Gibbet before the City Walls, and presently in the sight of all his enemies to hang them up. Now were Valentine and the Green knight in a great fear, but we will leave them a little, and return to those Christians that had gotten great Booty of victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reason that they were encountred by the Sarazens Army: in which encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days bickering. And at last, they espying what desperate case they stood in, with one consent issued forth, men, women, Priests, Clerks, and all degrees. When the Pagans saw their multitudes, they were forced to retire themselves into their Tents, and by that means the Christians obtained all their Prey of victuals, and safely conveyed it into the City, although with loss of many a life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the loss of his Warlike men, especially for his Son Valentine, and the Green knight; most heavy and sad also was the worthy king Pepin. Pacolet seeing these two Peers take the matter so heavily, recomforted them again, saying on this manner: Lords, leave off your lamentations, for it shall fare better with Valentine and the Green knight, than you can imagine. Friend (said the Emperor) if thy words prove true, I will advance thy Estate: Sir (said he) shortly you shall make tryal of my love and respect towards you: so he betook him to his Wooden Horse, and departed towards the Souldan's Host, and came thither just at the instant that the Souldan came to judge Valentine and the Green knight to death: and how it was prevented, you shall hear in the Chapter following.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

How *Pacolet* by Enchantment delivered *Valentine* and the Green Knight out of the bondage of the *Soldan*, and how *Pacolet* cozened the *Soldan*, when he had him upon his horſe, and inſtead of carrying him into *Portugal*, brought him into *Conſtantinople*, where he was hanged.

All being aſſembled, as aforeſaid, the Soldan began thus to ſpeak: Lords, here I preſent before you theſe that moſt incumber the mighty Gyant Ferragus, and that which moſt you ought to reſpect, is, that one of them hath forſaken his Religion, and for that cauſe my judgment is, that he be ſent to Ferragus, and from him receive puniſhment fitting his Offence: Nay, ſaid the other Sarazens, let us never do ſo, but let them both here ſuffer death to morrow-morn. Lords, quoth the Soldan, let it be ſo. Theſe reſolutions thus agreed upon, the Soldan entred his Pavillion to ſupper, where being ſet, Pacolet came and ſaluted him in the name of Mahomet: Pacolet (quoth the Soldan) thou art welcome, how fareth Ferragus my dear friend? Sir (ſaid Pacolet) right well, and by me ſends glad-ſome tidings, if you pleaſe to hear them. Right gladly, ſaid the Soldan, I prethee begin; then Pacolet drew him aſide, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and ſaid, Sir, know this, I am lately come out of Portugal, and ſent by the fair wife of Ferragus; whoſe heart is on fire with the love ſhe beareth to you; long hath ſhe concealed theſe her affections, but having no power longer to keep cloſe the cloſet of her breaſt, ſhe hath committed to me her love, her truſt, and what ſhe dares not utter to any other but my ſelf. Again, Ferragus is in Aquitain, ſo that no opportunity would be omitted, therefore come along with me, and ſtay no longer to expoſtulate, for upon my horſe will we ſuddenly arrive in Portugal, and bring you to the fair Ladies ſight; Pacolet, thou haſt more gladded my heart, than all the worldly treaſure can afford; true it is, ſhe is the onely Woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my Wiſhes: The Soldan cauſed Pacolet to be highly feaſted, ſo on the morrow they went on towards their journey, but mark what followed; Valentine and the Green knight you muſt conceive, were both in the Pavillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a ſight of Pacolet, but durſt not make any ſhew thereof;

uncertain Victory, that they pressed the enemy so far within danger, that when they would return, they could not, and so consequently were taken Prisoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Souldan.

The Souldan having gotten them in Bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his Mahomet, that they should never escape with life, but gave present commandment to raise up a Gibbet before the City Walls, and presently in the sight of all his enemies to hang them up. Now were Valentine and the Green knight in a great fear, but we will leave them a little, and return to those Christians that had gotten great Booty of victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reason that they were encountred by the Sarazens Army: in which encounter the Christians were so hard belet, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days bickering. And at last, they espying what desperate case they stood in, with one consent issued forth, men, women, Priests, Clerks, and all degrees. When the Pagans saw their multitudes, they were forced to retire themselves into their Tents, and by that means the Christians obtained all their Prey of victuals, and safely conveyed it into the City, although with loss of many a life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the loss of his Warlike men, especially for his Son Valentine, and the Green knight; most heavy and sad also was the worthy king Pepin. Pacolet seeing these two Peers take the matter so heavily, recomforted them again, saying on this manner: Lords, leave off your lamentations, for it shall fare better with Valentine and the Green knight, than you can imagine. Friend (said the Emperor) if thy words prove true, I will advance thy Estate: Sir (said he) shortly you shall make tryal of my love and respect towards you: so he betook him to his Wooden Horse, and departed towards the Souldan's Host, and came thither just at the instant that the Souldan came to judge Valentine and the Green knight to death: and how it was prevented, you shall hear in the Chapter following.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

How *Pacolet* by Enchantment delivered *Valentine* and the Green Knight out of the bondage of the *Soldan*, and how *Pacolet* cozened the *Soldan*, when he had him upon his horſe, and inſtead of carrying him into *Portugal*, brought him into *Conſtantinople*, where he was hanged.

ALl being aſſembled, as aforeſaid, the Soldan began thus to ſpeak: Lords, here I preſent before you theſe that moſt incumber the mighty Gyant Ferragus, and that which moſt you ought to reſpect, is, that one of them hath forſaken his Religion, and for that cauſe my judgment is, that he be ſent to Ferragus, and from him receive puniſhment fitting his Offence: Nay, ſaid the other Sarazens, let us never do ſo, but let them both here ſuffer death to morrow-morn. Lords, quoth the Soldan, let it be ſo. Theſe reſolutions thus agreed upon, the Soldan entred his Pavillion to ſupper, where being ſet, Pacolet came and ſaluted him in the name of Mahomet: Pacolet (quoth the Soldan) thou art welcome, how fareth Ferragus my dear friend? Sir (ſaid Pacolet) right well, and by me ſends glad-ſome tidings, if you pleaſe to hear them. Right gladly, ſaid the Soldan, I prethee begin; then Pacolet drew him aſide, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and ſaid, Sir, know this, I am lately come out of Portugal, and ſent by the fair wife of Ferragus; whoſe heart is on fire with the love ſhe beareth to you; long hath ſhe concealed theſe her affections, but having no power longer to keep cloſe the cloſet of her breaſt, ſhe hath committed to me her love, her truſt, and what ſhe dares not utter to any other but my ſelf. Again, Ferragus is in Aquitain, ſo that no opportunity would be omitted, therefore come along with me, and ſtay no longer to expoſtulate, for upon my horſe will we ſuddenly arrive in Portugal, and bring you to the fair Ladies ſight; Pacolet, thou haſt more gladded my heart, than all the worldly treaſure can afford; true it is, ſhe is the onely Woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my Wiſhes: The Soldan cauſed Pacolet to be highly feaſted, ſo on the morrow they went on towards their journey, but mark what followed; Valentine and the Green knight you muſt conceive, were both in the Pavillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a ſight of Pacolet, but durſt not make any ſhew therof;

and Pacolet on the other ſide ſhewed himſelf a flatterer to the Soldan, in eating, drinking, and revelling at the Soldan's Table, and in beholding the Priſoners, ſaid thus unto the Soldan, in hearing of all; Sir, how dare you venture your noble perſon ſo near to this Green knight, and not rather give him his deſert, for of all men living he is moſt dangerous; firſt, for the wrongs that he hath committed againſt his brother Ferragus, bereaving him of Clerimond, and giving her in marriage to a Chriſtian knight; next he hath renounced his Mahomet: theſe things conſidered, it is fit that he ſhould die, were there no more men living. Friend (quoth the Soldan) to morrow morning they ſhall both be hanged. Then the Soldan commanded the priſoners to be ſtrongly guarded upon pain of death, and ſo withdrawing him to his chamber, left Valentine and the Green knight under the conduct of thoſe that moſt deſired their deaths.

In the dead time of the night came Pacolet unto Valentine, and the Green knight, and firſt freed them of their bands, and by art ſo charmed all their Warders (who ſlept ſecurely) that he brought them paſt all danger. Having thus ſet them at liberty, about the dawning of the day he came to the Soldans Tent, crying out ſo loud to him, that he awaked him, and then Pacolet began thus to ſay unto him: Sir, little appeareth your love to the wife of Ferragus, ſeeing for her ſake you are loath to break one houres ſleep: whereunto the Soldan replyed, thou haſt done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a moſt fearful dream, and thus it was; Methought a Crow did bear me ſwiftly through the air, and as ſhe was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and ſtruck at me with his Bill ſo hard, that the blood forthwith iſſued out in abundance; now this dream maketh me much to fear that Ferragus hath ſome intelligence of my deſires, and meanes to revenge himſelf upon me. Away Sir (quoth Pacolet) with this childiſh fear, will you therefore neglect the love of ſuch a beautifull Lady: by Mahomet (quoth the Soldan) thou ſpeakeſt truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this charge: Sirrah be ſecret, if my Uncle Bryan aſk for me, tell him I am gone a little way to diſport with Pacolet. Then Pacolet took the Soldan behind him upon his Wooden Horſe, and turning the Pin, the Horſe roſe up into the Air ſo ſwiftly, that in a little ſpace they were come to Conſtantinople, even in the Emperors Palace:

The

The Soldan perceiving Pacolets horſe to make a ſtay, ſaid thus unto him: Friend, are we at our Journeys end? Yea, and fear nothing, for we are now in Portugal, in the Palace of King Ferragus. By Mahomet (ſaid the Soldan) the Divel hath born us here very quickly. Well ſaid Pacolet) enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean ſpace I will haſte into the chamber of the Lady, and preſently cauſe you to be brought unto her Bed. Do ſo, quoth the Soldan, for I am even well near ravished with joy, and ſhall think each minute an hour, till I have my deſire.

Now ſitteth the Soldan in the Hall, attending the coming back of Pacolet, while he in the mean ſpace, maketh towards the chamber wherein the Emperor lay; being come to the Door, he gave a great blow againſt it, inſomuch that the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus preſumed to diſturb the Emperors reſt? Friend, quoth Pacolet, fear not, for I am Pacolet, newly come from the Soldan's Hoſt, where I have ſet at liberty, both Valentine, and the Green Kt. who were condemned to die. Beſides, ſay unto the Emperor, that I have brought along with me the Soldan himſelf to be in Portugal: Wherefore he may now be revenged on him at full, for he hath moſt juſtly deſerved Death. The Chamberlain told the Emperor all theſe tidings, and King Pepin alſo; ſo arming themſelves, they came into the Hall where the Soldan ſat: The Soldan perceiving himſelf betrayed, cried out with a loud voice: Thou falſe Pacolet, Traytor to my perſon, I vow to be revenged upon thee, for thy diſloyal practice towards me, and therewithal drew out his Sword, and like a mad-man ran up and down the Hall, ſtriking the very ſtones ſo fiercely, that he made the fire to flie from thoſe ſenceleſs Walls: As he was in this madding fit, the Attendants entred towards him with Torches. The Soldan eſpying them, defended himſelf ſo fiercely, that he ſlew the Squire that attended upon King Pepin: this Act of his, fired the courage of the King, that he made a blow at him, and felled him to the earth. Being fallen, they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came Valentine and the Green Knight, who finding the Soldan there in bands, were very joyfull.

The Emperor and the King ſeeing Valentine, were joyful for his Deliverance, giving great thanks to Pacolet for his care over

his ſon, and withal ſaid, Pacolet, one ſtrain more of thy horſe muſt I demand; you ſhall Sir (quoth Pacolet) and if you will get behind me, I ſhall inſtantly tranſport you into Hell. But Lords, let that paſs, and return unto the death of the Soldan, for if he eſcape your hands at this time, a world of miſeries will follow: ſo that very hour they proceeded to Judgment, and commanded him to be hanged on the greateſt Tower of the Palace, even in the very ſight of all his Pagan Hoſt.

This done, the Pagans ſtood as men confounded and amazed to ſee him there hanging, and wondred how he came within the City; but at laſt Bryan his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traytor Pacolet. After they had long lamented the death of the Soldan, they gathered themſelves to counſel, and in his ſtead choſe his Uncle Bryan Soldan. After all theſe things done, Pacolet took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into Aquitain to comfort the Lady Clerimond, as he promiſed: but before his departure, Valentine came unto him, and ſaid: Pacolet, at your coming into Aquitain, ſalute from me my Mother Bellyſant, and my loving Lady Clerimond, my brother Orſon, and the good Duke of Aquitain, with the reſt of his Nobles; and above all the reſt, deliver this to my Mother, by which ſhe ſhall underſtand our whole proceedings here. Sir, ſaid Pacolet, all this ſhall I willingly perform: ſo taking his horſe, he leapt upon him, and he flew up into the Air as ſwift as ſmoak.

The next morning Pacolet was come to his Journeys end, and finding the Duke of Aquitain, the Empreſs Bellyſant, Orſon, and Clerimond, all in ſafety, he ſaluted them all, and deliverd them Letters, who ſaid; Lady, your ſon Valentine greeteth you well, ſhewing you that the Emperor would gladly ſee you, confeſſing his rath credit given to a Traytor, about your baniſhment, who hath requitted it with the loſs of his life, wherefore he promiſeth, that ſo ſoon as he can free his Country from the Incurſions of the Sarazens. to come himſelf in perſon, and then forthwith bring with him the Green Knight, whom Orſon vanquiſhed. The Lady hearing theſe joyful tidings, ſuddenly fell in a ſwound, but Orſon perceiving it, ſuddenly ſnatched her up into his arms, and being ſomewhat come to her ſelf, ſhe ſaid: My child, I am ſtrikly overcome with joy, in that I underſtand I am proved innocent of ſuch abominable crimes, as I

was

was falſly accuſed of: but I long to ſee the Emperor, whom if I might but once again behold, I ſhould not longer deſire to live, for I am well enough revenged, and my Accuſer hath juſtly ſatisfied a moſt ſhameful Death for his treachery.

CHAP. XLIV.

How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to ſuccour *Ferragus*, and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*, and how the King of *Inde* cauſed King *Trompart*'s head to be ſtruck off: and how he would have married with *Clerimond*; and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the ſhape of a Woman: and how *Ferragus* was ſlain, and how *Orſon* and the Duke went with their Army to *Conſtantinople*, to ſuccour the Emperor: and how *Orſon* led along with him his Mother: and how all the *Pagans* were ſlain before *Conſtantinople*: and how the Emperor received his Son *Orſon*, and his Wife *Bellyſant* with joy.

PAcolet being arrived in Aquitain, at that ſame time that King Trompart came thither to aid Ferragus againſt the Chriſtians; at whoſe coming, Ferragus began thus to ſalute him; Famous King, of your coming I am glad, hoping by your aſſiſtance to get back my ſiſter Clerimond, and to be revenged on all thoſe that have detained her. Ferragus (ſaid K. Trompart) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me Adrimain the Enchanter, whoſe skill ſhall confound Pacolet in his own Art. Thanks gentle King, I am much bound to you for your love, and if he can but get Pacolet into my hands, I ſhall reward him liberally. Sir (quoth Adrimain) put your truſt in me, and ſo taking his leave, betook him to his Magick Art. Being provided of all things; amongſt the reſt, he laded himſelf with victuals, and took his way towards Aquitain; coming thither, he craved entrance of the gates to ſell his victuals, which was eaſily granted. After he had ſold all, he went into the Palace, where he chanced on Pacolet, whom Pacolet knew well. Adrimain, quoth Pacolet, you are welcom, from whence come you, and what is your errand? Then ſaid Adrimain, you know that long I ſerved King Trompart, yet

by

by fate I am fallen into a great mischance, for one in his Court having smitten me, because I would not teach him the Principles of my Art, I drew forth my knife and killed him: Now fearing death, I am expelled the Court, and for this cause I fled towards you for succour, and will prove unto you a faithful servant, so you be pleased to accept of me. Adrimain said Pacolet, I am content, let it be so, make thee good Cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, Adrimain saw the fair Clerimond pass through the Hall, who presently demanded what Lady it was: Then, said Pacolet, it is the sister of Ferragus, who must be married to a right valiant Knight. Whilst they were thus in conference, came Orson unto them, and said: Gentlemen, I could gladly wish that one of your Art would shew somewhat to delight the Assembly.

At whose words, Adrimain drew up a Cup above a Pillar, in such wise, that through the Palace (seemingly to all the company) ran a River furnished with all sorts of Fish, little and great: when the Beholders saw the water to come up so strongly against them, they were afraid of drowning. Pacolet beholding this feat, amongst the rest, began a Song, and in that song a Charm, that it seemed to all the beholders, that a Hart ran through that River, overturning all things that stood in his way. After this Hart ran hunters with their hounds. This made many of the beholders leap after, thinking to have taken the Hart: but Pacolet by his Art, made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This sport, quoth Orson was very well performed; and so the company breaking up, Pacolet led Adrimain to his Chamber, to be with him, but proved fatal; for towards midnight, Adrimain so enchanted all within the Court, and with them Pacolet, that he had time to work all that he delivered. Afterwards he went towards the house of Pacolet, and getting him, came into the Chamber of Clerimond, and by Art caused her to rise and make her ready, and setting her on the horse behind him, came into a window, turned a Pin, and suddenly he arrived in the Tent of King Trompart. Being come thither, he cried out aloud, saying: Great King sleep not, but hasten you hither, and you shall see the pleasant Lady Clerimond, whom I have stollen from Aquitain, and with her Pacolet's horse. Now said the King, I well perceive thy love: Is this the sister of Ferragus? Yea, said Adrimain, and I have stollen her away, and also betrayed Pacolet my

fellow

fellow Magician, for he ſhall never be Maſter of his horſe again: I, but (ſaid the King) art thou acquainted with the manner of his horſe? O long ſince, worthy King, and by vertue of the Pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known unto King Trompart, he thought to make experience of the horſe himſelf, and taking Clerimond behind him, would tranſport her into his own Country, and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his arms, (for all this while ſhe was not awaked out of her enchanted ſleep) and ſet her on the horſe of wood. All this Adrimain was eye-witneſs of, and ſaid thus unto him: My Lord, if you faill one jot of the true uſe of the horſe, both your ſelf and the Lady are in very great danger. Fear not that (quoth Trompart) and ſo turning the Pin, he mounted ſwiftly into the air, and before the next morning he was two hundred miles on his way, but not at his journeys end, for now awaked the Lady Clerimond out of her enchanted ſleep, who ſeeing her ſelf ſo deluded, fell ſuddenly into a ſwound: this chance ſtruck to the heart of K. Trompart, for he was afraid leſt ſhe had been dead, and ſo turning the Pin, he ſtopped the horſe in a fair green field by a Fountain, then taking the Lady from the horſe, he laid her on the graſs, and took a little water and caſt it on her face, and the Lady recovering, made ſuch grievous lamentations, that King Trompart was well nigh out of his wits; within this place there was a Shepherd, of whom King Trompart required ſomewhat to eat, which he gave unto the Lady, who eat thereof, and was refreſhed: and at laſt being come again unto her ſpeech, ſhe weeping, uttered theſe words: Unhappy I above all Creatures, for I have loſt my joy by accurſed Treaſon. Alas Valentine my Love, curſed be he that hath ſeparated us. Trompart hearing her ſo clamorous, reproved her roundly, ſaying: Lady, leave off theſe fooliſh words of the Chriſtian Boy, or elſe I ſhall ſeperate thy head from thy body; is it not better for thee to be my Wife, that am ſole Lord of all this Juriſdiction, than to have a beggerly ſtart-up, that hath neither Land nor Living; and with theſe words he would have killed her, but the Lady diſdaining him, hit him with her Fiſt upon the Mouth.

This ſtrange and unlookt for diſdainfulneſs, put King Trompart into ſuch an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and

ſet

let her upon the Horſe again, and turning the Pin the contrary way, preſently, inſtead of carrying her into his own Country, he lighted in Inde, in the midſt of a Market-place, kept there that day: the people ſeeing ſuch a ſtrange ſight, marvelled much thereat: The Lady Clerimond by this time, knew the Horſe to be Pacolet's, and ſaid: Now am I falſly betraied, and Pacolet robbed of his Horſe; but my dear Valentine, he it is moſt ſticketh at my heart, for now ſhall I never ſee thee more. Trompart (thought for all this, that he had been in his own Country) ſtill beating down her piteous laments with bitter words. But mark what followed; tidings was brought to the King of Inde, of what had happened, who commanded them to be brought before him. But this fell out ill for King Trompart, for the King of Inde knew him well. King Trompart being come before the King of Inde, he bid him welcom, for you are he that put my brother to death: wherefore I will be revenged on thee and ſo cauſed his head to be ſmitten off. After, the Lady was led into the Kings Palace, where he ſat in his own perſon, and he thus ſaid: Lady, I know now of whence you are, by the bright ſplendor of your face, it hath enthralled my heart; wherefore if ſo you pleaſe to be my Wife, I will make you Queen of all this ſpacious Continent. Sir (quoth ſhe) you ſpeak graciouſly, but to take any man to Husband, I have made a ſolemn Vow to refrain during the ſpace of one whole year, wherefore pleaſeth it you to let my Vow be accompliſhed, and that time being run out, then will I willingly conſent thereto. Well, ſaid the King, thy anſwer is reaſonable, let it be as thou haſt ſaid, perform thy Vow, and remain within my Palace; and he commanded that her Attendants ſhould be as great as if ſhe had been his Queen, allowing her a Chamber of State, into which Chamber ſhe cauſed to be brought the Wooden Horſe that carried her thither, and being there, ſhe placed it in the ſecreteſt place ſhe could deviſe, and ſtill deſired ſhe might be freed out of that danger. Now leave we her awhile, and return to Pacolet, and look back alſo to Aquitain,, and ſee the mourning that is made for the Lady Clerimond.

The Night after Adrimain had betrayed Pacolet, great lamentations were made for the fair Clerimond, throughout the City of Aquitain. Moreover, when Pacolet found Adrimain abſent, he doubted more, and looking round about the Chamber, wherein the Horſe ſtood,

ſtood, he ſuddenly miſſed it: all this ſo calling out, Pacolet fell into a moſt grievous paſſion, inſomuch, as had not Orſon at that inſtant come in, he would have deſtroyed himſelf.

Pacolet being thus reſcued by Orſon, and beholding the general ſorrow for the beautious Lady Clerimond, he began thus to comfort them: Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on that Traitor Adrimain, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithal he departed, and apparelled himſelf like a gallant Maid, and took his way to the Hoſt of Ferragus. Being come among the Army, many Pagans prayed for her love; but evermore Pacolet excuſed himſelf, and ſaid: Pardon me, I pray you, for I am promiſed already to the Enchanter Adrimain, and ſo they let her paſs on. At laſt Pacolet came to the Tent where Adrimain was; at which Adrimain ſtood amazed, and was ſo deeply overcome in love, that that night he retained him into his Chamber; but Pacolet no whit to ſeek of his ſhifts, made ſomewhat ſqueamiſh, and ſaid: My Lord know this, I have been deſired of many, but I think fitteſt the worthieſt to be firſt ſerved: Daughter (quoth Adrimain) fear nothing, make good cheer, and be merry, for I have a good ſtomach to thee, and will uſe thee well. Now he committed the Maiden to one of his Servants, to be ſerved with all the Dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feaſted in the Tent of Adrimain; while Adrimain is in the Tent of Ferragus, Pacolet demanded of the ſervant of Adrimain, what was become of King Trompart: the ſervant ſaid: I think he is returned again into his own Country, and carried along with him the Lady Clerimond upon a Horſe of Wood that my Maſter had given him. Pacolet hearing this, was vexed at the heart. By this time was Adrimain come unto his Tent, ſaying to Pacolet: Daughter, is it time to go to reſt? ſee here is the bed we mean to ſport in: Your will be done, ſaid Pacolet. Then Adrimain put off his Cloaths, and went into the Bed: Pacolet ſo enchanted him in ſo ſtrong aſleep, that awake he could not, till the morning. As he dealt with Adrimain, ſo he did with all round about him; and putting off his Womans attire, he clad himſelf in all the richeſt Cloths that Adrimain had; and after, with his own Sword cut off his Head, and bare it away with him. Having thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of Ferragus, the which he found well guarded, and

there by his Art, he also cast them all into a heavy sleep. This done, he entred the Tent of Ferragus, where he suddenly made him leap out of his Bed, and cloath him: and tying him in his Girdle, made him run by his side like a Spaniel, till he came even to the very entrance of the Gates of Aquitain.

When Pacolet was come to the Gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himself, accompanied with many of his Barons; and espying Pacolet, they said unto him: Where is Clerimond, that thou bringest not her again? he answered, Lords, be patient a while, I cannot shew you all at once: know this, I am fully revenged on Adrimain, for here I have brought his head, and here is Ferragus, who by my Art I have also surprized, as you may see. Then said Orson, you have done very well. Nay, Lords, more yet I have to say, which is, I have enchanted asleep the whole Host of Ferragus, therefore if ever you mean to have a resistless Victory, go now. What say you? my Lords, quoth Orson, methinks Pacolet hath well advised us, therefore let us go on: so they slaughtered all that lay before them, and put Ferragus into a most filthy, dark, and loathsom Prison, until their return.

After this great slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into Aquitain, and there commanded to have the Giant Ferragus brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted sleep, unto whom the Duke thus said: Ferragus, if thou wilt here forsake thy Mahomet, and receive Baptism, then thou shalt live, which if thou refuse to do, thou shalt surely die. Know, said Ferragus, I had rather suffer a thousand deaths: so he was suddenly beheaded. After his death, Orson took leave of the Duke, and went towards Constantinople to aid his Father the Grecian Emperor, and his Uncle King Pepin of France, against the unbelieving Sarazens, that had strongly besieged that City: but a little before his departing the Duke said thus unto him: Worthy Knight, sith you are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you company; Orson was very joyful to hear him say so, and gave him thanks, so taking some small time to set things in a readiness, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and a valiant Knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way the Empress Bellyfant much lamented the hard usage of her Lord: but Orson pitying her, said: Mother,

leave

leave off your Tears, and only joy in that you have been falſly accuſed, which now will much encreaſe your Honour: But I fear moſt our entrance into the City, which as I hear, is much troubled with Sarazens. Nay, ſaid Pacolet, fear not that, for I will work a devile to enter, and my ſelf will go before and tell them ſo; Do ſo, ſaid Orſon, and tell Valentine the hard Fortunes of Clerimond: Nay, quoth Pacolet, not I, I will be no Bearer of ſuch ſad tydings.

Now King Pepin and the Emperor being ſtrongly beſieged, were in great diſtreſs for Victuals within the City, and there was no way to be relieved but by the Sword. Then Valentine knowing their great neceſſity, accompanied with the Green Knight, and a worthy Band of Souldiers iſſued out of Conſtantinople, and charged upon 200 Chariots of Victuals of the Pagans, and recovered the ſame, with the death of all thoſe that attended upon them. Having gotten this Booty, they made their return towards Conſtantinople, thinking to recover the City, but they were beſet round about: On the one ſide with the Soldan, and the other ſide with the King of Arabia, and thirdly with a King called Affricion. Amongſt theſe Companions fell out a terrible bloody Conflict, but Valentine in ſingle fight killed the King of Dramagen, and the King Clarian. The Green Knight alſo behaved himſelf Gallantly, for at one blow he ſtruck off the Shield Arm of the King of Morien, and before that ſlew his brother. But all this Valour little availed, for in the end they were both taken Priſoners, and led before the Soldan; who having them in his poſſeſſion, aſſembled 15 Pagan Knights to adjudge them to death. Valentine being thus in Bands, greatly lamented the ſtate of the Lady Clerimond, taking leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the reſt; ſaying, I muſt now forſake you all, and never again behold your faces. The Green Knight ſeeing him ſo paſſionate, ſaid; Let us die in a good cauſe, and welcom death.

Now was the Soldan ſet in his Chair of State, to proceed to Judgment: in the mean ſpace in comes Pacolet, in the midſt of the Throng, not known of any, and come and ſtood before the Judgment Seat, and kneeling down, ſaid: Right dear Sir, know I am a Meſſenger from your brother Godart, the great King of Argier, who to your ſuccour hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, and by me requireth on which ſide of your Army they ſhall be ranked. A-

gain, he prays you, if you have any Chriſtian Priſoners, to ſend them him, and he will ſend them into his own Country, to draw the Plow, and here ſtands a couple of fit inſtruments for that purpoſe. The Soldan rejoyced at theſe tydings, and commanded he ſhould be highly feaſted for that night: mean time Valentine and the Green Knight were glad of Pacolets company. In the dead time of the night, Pacolet went unto them, and giving to each of them a Horſe, unbound them, and bad them follow him. Being out of the enemies reach, Pacolet ſaid thus unto them: Lords, be comforted; for in this Land is aſſembled the Duke of Aquitain, and the Knight Orſon, the noble Empreſs, and the Lady Fezon: I, but ſaid Valentine, why cometh not the fair Clerimond? then anſwered Pacolet, ſhe would have come, but being Sea-ſick, ſhe was forced to return again to Aquitain, So Valentine for that time queſtioned no farther with him.

Then Pacolet adviſed them all to go into the City of Conſtantinople, and on the morrow iſſue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy. In the mean ſpace I will on the other ſide ſo beſtir my ſelf, that the Hoſt of the Warlike Duke ſhall come up, and give a freſh aſſault. Now the Soldan ſeeing this, ſhall imagine it to be his Brother, the King of Argier.

Pacolet (ſaid Valentine) thou haſt well adviſed, and ſo it ſhall be affected. Thus they departed; Pacolet took his way to the Duke of Aquitain, who was yet on the Sea-ſhore, telling him that he had been with the Hoſt of the Soldan, and how he had freed Valentine and the Green Knight. Then Orſon anſwered, Pacolet, there is yet one thing more to be done, and that is this, that to morrow in the morning, we aſſail the Hoſt of the Sarazens on the one ſide, and they of Conſtantinople on the other ſide, and ſo by that means we ſhall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, ſhall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw up his men in order, and ſo kept themſelves that night.

The next morning the Emperor and King Pepin diligently brought forth their men to the fight, and divided their Hoſt into five Battles. The firſt was delivered to Valentine, the ſecond to the Green Knight, the third to King Pepin, the fourth to Millan Daugler, and the fifth to Sampſon of Orleance, one that bear in his Banner a Bear of Silver: At the break of day, theſe powers iſſued out of the City,

to

to give an aſſault upon the Enemy: being come into the field, they ſounded their inſtruments, the noiſe whereof ſo affrighted the Sarazens, that they ran out of their Tents, crying, an allarum, an allarum. This Battel was extream hot for the Chriſtians that day, yet the enemy had no cauſe to boaſt. King Pepin behaved himſelf ſo valiantly, and cryed out to his Souldiers, St. Dennis, St. Dennis. Then a Sarazen cryed out to the Soldan, to retire, for the ſafeguard of their lives, for this night have we loſt our two Priſoners, and alſo there is coming againſt us, a new ſupply of a great Army. Then the Soldan thought that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forwards, and rouzed up their courage doubly, inſomuch that they inforced the Chriſtians to fall back, but little availed their pride: for there came upon them the Duke of Aquitain, with his forces, and aſſaulted them ſo fiercely, that they put to the Sword all that did come before them, and thus the Chriſtians Conquered.

When the Battel was ended, and the Chriſtians had recovered up their ſcattered forces, Valentine and Orſon came before the Emperor, doing unto him dutifull reverence. Father (quoth Valentine) here you may behold my Brother Orſon, whom as yet you never knew, then the Emperor embraced him with tears, and ſo did the worthy King Pepin alſo. Fair Son (ſaid the Emperor) you are welcome, for by you my joys are doubled. Then aſſembled together the Emperor, King Pepin, Valentine, Orſon, the Green Knight Blandiman, and Guidard the Merchant, he that vanquiſhed the Falſe Arch-Prieſt. All theſe with great Triumph ſet out to viſit the Tent of the Noble Empreſs Bellyſant, and the Lady Fezon.

By this time they are come: when the Emperor ſaw his Wife Bellyſant, he leapt off his Horſe, and in tears and ſighs, not being able to ſpeak, he embraced her: and Valentine and Orſon bare them company in their Lamentations, ſo did alſo many of the reſt there aſſembled. At laſt, words took place, and the Emperour recounted all the hard dealings that had proceeded againſt the Empreſs, requiring Pardon for what was paſt. My Lord (quoth ſhe) ſince it hath ſo pleaſed the Fates to bring me unto your ſight, I freely forgive all wrongs, but I long to ſee the man that proved my innocency with his Sword, Love (quoth the Emperor) this is he by whom your honor was preſerved. Sir, quoth the Lady, you ought to be regarded for

Your

your Service to the Empire of Greece, and King of France: For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thousand Marks in Gold. Lady, I thank your Bounty, and will attend you during life. Then, said Valentine, Mother I pray tell me some Tidings of Clerimond. Fair Son, Clerimond hath been stollen from Aquitain, and given to King Trompart, that came to the Pagans aid. Valentine hearing this, lookt strangely upon Pacolet, thinking that he had deceived him, and would have smitten him, but Pacolet entreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stollen my horse away, but I am revenged on him by cutting off his head. Valentine understanding these Misfortunes, and that every one was innocent, grew into bitter Passions for his loss.

CHAP. XLIV.

How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused *Orson* falsly of Treason, and how the Knife was found in the Kings Bed. And how *Orson* claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon, and how *Valentine* after the Conquest of the Dragon, caused the King of *Antioch* and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the lawless love of the Queen *Rosamond*. And how the King of *Antioch* was put to death for renouncing his Mahometry, by *Brandiffer* his Wifes Father, and how the Emperor of *Greece* and the Green Kight were taken Prisoners by *Brandiffer*.

These Wars thus ended, King Pepin took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into France. Orson would needs go along with his Uncle Pepin, and spend the remainder of his days in his service. The King was content, and said unto him, I will make you High Constable of France; moreover, (if so chance that my young Son Charles should decease before me, I will make you K. of France. I thank you gracious Uncle, and you shall find me faithful, and along with me will I bear the Lady Fezon: the day of taking leave came,

and

and each embraced other with Kiſſes and Tears: But Valentine could not reſt, for he had loſt his love, wherefore I am reſolved to ſeek my Love, for whom I endangered my life, and by my Sword I won her: her I bewail, and her will I recover again if ſhe be alive: but if I find her not, ſhort and woful will be my days; and ſo he called Pacolet to him, and ſaid; Wilt thou ſerve me, and be my Companion in this unknown Task? Sir, quoth he, willingly, and am ready whenſoever you ſhall ſet forward. Then Valentine made all things in a readineſs for his departure, and now hath taken Sea and left his Crown and Country, only accompanied with three Attendants. Now leave we him, and ſpeak of K. Pepin, who by this time is ſeated in Paris, and was honourably received: But above all, the Valiant Orſon was highly eſteemed, inſomuch that he had even all the command of the Kingdom delivered over unto him. If ought was to be brought before the King, Orſon was the man to be ſued unto.

This Greatneſs of Orſon fretted Haufray and Henry (of whom you have heard before) to the heart, inſomuch that they plotted a means how to take away his life, ſaying, it was much to their indignity that Orſon ſhould be thus preferred before them, being Sons unto the King: Surely, ſays the one to the other, his Glory cannot long endure, for his own pride will be his overthrow: I but (ſaid Haufray) underſtand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our eldeſt Siſter, to wit, Florence and Garnier, theſe are both hardy and fierce, and by them methinks ſome Plot might be ſet on foot. Again, they are fit Members to execute any Villany, for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Uſher unto his private Chamber: now either of theſe may enter into the Kings Chamber, and murder him in his Bed, and ſuch a Deed being done, it will ſurely be laid to Orſons charge, for he only hath the Guard of his Perſon: If this can be effected, Orſon will ſurely be condemned to death, and the Realm wholly light into our hands. In this it is neceſſary to uſe ſecreſie.

Upon this reſolution, they ſent for theſe two Inſtruments of murder, to acquaint them with the Treaſon, and being come, Haufray ſaid unto them: Sirs, I and my Brother have laid a Plot to do us good, and raiſe you to Honour; which thing we chooſe rather to offer unto you, for that you are allied unto us, and therefore we reſpect you before others. This it is, you know our Father the King never loved

us, but hath ever advanced strangers, and left us slightly regarded: [illegible] things considered, my Brother, I, and you two Brothers, descended from our Uncle, determind to put our doting Father to death, and so we may [illegible] the Land into our own Government. This thing by us first plotted, were fittest to be executed by one of you, and I think you, Garnier, to be the fittest for it, because you being Usher in the Kings Chamber, you may convey your self behind some Arras, ans when the King is in Bed, murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King is slain, the Fact will be laid upon Orson, for he only hath the charge of his body, and so we shall quickly get him adjudged to death; and as for little Charles, we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle (said Garnier) doubt not but that I shall undertake this Enterprize. Shortly after, Garnier on a Night, when the King was at Supper, got a Knife, and secretly entred into the Kings Chamber, and hid himself behind the Hangings. When the hour of the Kings going to bed came, he was attended by his Guard and Chamberlain, as the manner was. The King being laid, every man departed, save only Orson, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep: Orson seeing the King asleep, without making noise, left him, and laid himself down upon a Pallat by him.

The dead time of the Night was come, wherein Garnier assayed, (having the Knife ready) this bloody Enterprize: But being come to the Beds-side, ready to lift up his Arm to strike the fatal stroak, he thought the King would awaken, and so trembling for fear, laid him down by the Beds-side, and durst not stir: Anon he would adventure again, but being (as before) possest with fear, he put the knife within the Bed, then he returned to the place from whence he came. Orson all the while slept soundly, misdoubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful Dream, which was, that one would have robbed his Wife of Honour: Also he thought, that besides a River he saw two Herons who fought with a Hawk, but the Hawk defended her self so valiantly, that he had slain the two Herons, had they not been assisted by a multitude of little Birds, and the Herons likewise had slain the Hawk, but that an Eagle rescued him.

At this Dream Orson awaked, and was much astonied thereat, saying; The Gods preserve my Brother Valentine from Treasons.

By

By this time the day broke, and Orſon ſoftly ſtole out of the Chamber, fearing to awaken the King. When Garnier ſaw Orſon gone, he alſo followed ſoon after, and took his way towards the Chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longed to hear the newes: Garnier (quoth they) tell us what is done: Lords (ſaid Garnier) I would not do the like again for all the Gold in France, and yet I have not hurt the King, for ſtill as I was lifting up my hand to ſtrike, fear and horrour did ſo affright me, that I durſt no more adventure. But I have adviſed me of another Plot, and have of purpoſe left the knife in the Kings Bed, and this it is, we will accuſe Orſon of treaſon, and tell the King, there are four Traytors, whereof Orſon is the principal. Alſo they will make away little Charles; and ſo wholly poſſeſs the Crown. To prove this, we will ſay, that for this purpoſe Orſon hath conveyed a knife into the Kings bed, if any demand how we know thereof, we will ſay, one of us ſtanding at the door, heard all their conference. Garnier (ſaid Haufray) you ſay well, but if Orſon deny it, you and your Brother ſhall crave Combat againſt him, ſay that by ſuch adventure you come by the worſe, my brother and I ſhall find men enough to reſcue you. Thus they reſolved, and thus was treaſon laid the ſecond time for Orſon the innocent. The next day the King being at dinner, attended by Haufray and Henry, who ſhewed good countenance to Orſon: When Garnier ſaw his time, he came before the King, ſaying: Worthy King, your Grace hath beſtowed on me many Kingly Favours, wherefore it is my duty to open unto you a Treaſon which lately I chanced to hear, and to the end you may have a care of your perſon, I will bewray unto you the practiſers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on Orſon firſt, for he was the principal Traytor; the number in all are four, Orſon was the man ſhould kill you in your Bed with a Knife, and that your Majeſty may the better credit me, this day as they met together, I was in a certain place, and heard Orſon ſay, the knife which you ſhould be killed with, was hid in your Bed, now if it pleaſe you either to go or ſend, you ſhall find my words true. Sir (ſaid Florent) my Brother ſpeaketh nothing but truth. The King hearing theſe words, beheld Orſon with many ſtrange countenances, and at laſt ſaid: Falſe and diſloyal man, can ſuch a thought enter into thy breaſt, as to take away my life, whom

I have more respected than my own Children! Liege (quoth Orson) be not lightly carryed away to believe this accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall prove envy the Author of all these Treasons. Speak no more (said the King) for if the Knife be found in the Bed, I will crave no further proof. So calling to his Lords, he said: Lords, I was never so suddenly confounded as at this present. Sir (said Myllon Daugler) I know not what to say, but I cannot believe that Orson is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty: yea (but said the King) if we find a Knife in the Bed, it is an evident sign to move me to believe it; I pray let us go make tryal. So the King went himself into the Chamber, accompanied with many Witnesses: and being there, they found the Knife, as Garnier said: Alas, said the King, in whom may I trust, when my own Kinsman seeketh my life? but I vow he shall suffer a shameful death. With that a valiant Knight, named Simon, came to Orson (which loved him well) and said: Alas Sir, flye and save your life, for the King hath found the Knife in his bed, and so the King hath vowed your death. Orson said: I fear nothing. The King entred the Hall where Orson was, guarded with fifty one Knights, and so assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgment.

Orson being brought before the King and his Lords, he said unto them: Worthy Lords, since my words cannot defend me, I require but the custom of your Country, which is, that when a man shall be accused of Murther or Treason, he might crave the Combat against his Enemy.

Now for my part, I hold my self innocent, which I will maintain, if by your Counsels you grant me that which of right belongeth to me: and further, to clear my self, Lo here is my Gage, if I be overcome, do with my body as it pleaseth you. Garnier said: Orson, I think you had better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reason to answer you in the Field. Ah Traytor! there is nothing yet proved, but that a man that feareth not damnation, and believeth Honour, saith so. Upon these words the twelve Peers of France caused Orson to be removed out of the place, and also the Brothers his adversaries, while in the mean space the rest disputed the question. At last it was adjudged that Orsons demand was reasonable,

able, and that he ought to be heard. Then were the Brothers called in again before the King; then Duke Myllon demanded of Garnier, who were confederate with him in the Kings death? Lords (quoth he) I will not bewray them for all the wealth in France: Garnier (ſaid the Judge) I give Sentence, that you and your Brother take up Orſons Gage; and fight with him, for ſince you conceal the reſt of theſe Murtherers, it is to be doubted that there is malice in the plot. Orſon at this ſentence rejoyced, and caſt his Glove down to theſe two Traytors, ſaying: Lords, here is my Glove that I caſt down to theſe two Traitors, upon this condition, that if my cauſe be foul, or by them conquered, I offer my body to your will and pleaſure: Riſe then, ſaid the King, for judgment is paſt: and for your further ſecurity, it were good we had ſome hoſtage: With that Haufray and Henry offered themſelves body for body, for Garnier and his Brother: and for Orſon ſtood Myllon Daugler, and Duke Sampſon. So a months day was aſſigned for the Combat.

The time being come that they ſhould fight, Duke Myllon Daugler, Sampſon, Galeram, and Garvaies, brought forth Orſon, for he was well beloved: when he was armed and well mounted, he rode through the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place appointed. Long had he not been there, but Haufray and Henry entred the field with their two Nephews, Royally armed. Garnier and Florent the two Traitors, greatly feared Orſon, but Haufray and Henry ſtill comforted them, promiſing them aid: Being thus in a readineſs, the Biſhop of Paris went unto them, and gave unto them all three an Oath, according to the Law of Arms, and then the Biſhop departed away. After came the Heraulds and the Serjeants of the field, to clear the place. Now Haufray had provided 3000 men hard by, and given them command, that as ſoon as they heard him blow his Horn, they ſhould let forwards towards him. This gladed the Traitors at the heart, but it little availed them: for as ſoon as the Trumpets gave ſignal, Orſon couched his Spear, and putting his Spurs to his Horſe, ran upon them with fury, and ſent Garnier ſuch a ſtroak, that he ran through both Shield and Armour: Florent on the other ſide, gave Orſon a blow, that he thought he had ſtruck againſt a Tower: falſe and accurſed Traitor (quoth Orſon) thou haſt wrongfully accuſed me, ere this day paſs, I ſhall ſhew thee where Loyalty doth reſt:

reſt: and with theſe words, he with his Sword ſmote Garnier out of his Saddle, and withal pulled off his Helm, and had cut off his head, if his Brother Florent had not reſcued him.

Again, Orſon made towards Garnier, and ſtriking off his ear, ſaid: Fair Maſter, I would be loath you ſhould loſe by the Bargain. Here began a freſh Combat betwixt theſe three Champions, Garnier having recovered again his Helm, came upon Orſon with all his force, thinking to have left ſome mark of that Encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him, he had ſoon been ſlain. Thus Orſon had enough to do with theſe two, for they were of ſtout Courage, and beſide they relied much upon reſcue from Haufray and Henry, but ſtill Orſon followed, and at laſt ſo wounded Garnier, that he was fain to forſake his Horſe. Being on the ground, he ſmote at Orſon's Horſe, inſomuch that he cut off one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but Orſon being light and ſtrong, leapt from off his back, and being on the ground, he came and took Garnier between his Arms ſo ſtrongly, that he took away his Shield, and threw him on the Earth, but as he would have wounded him in the belly, Florent came upon Orſon, and gave ſuch a ſtroak on his Helm, that he made him ſtagger: Orſon vexed hereat, ſmote him ſo, that he overthrew his Horſe dead to the Earth, and after took off his Helm. Florent was ſo aſhamed hereat, that he ran up and down the Field, covering his head with his Shield, and Orſon took pleaſure in chaſing of him: ſtay Florent (ſaid his Brother) flie not, return, or we ſhall be vanquiſhed, and herewithal they made a freſh Encounter upon Orſon, and with their Swords laid on ſo luſtily, that the ſtroaks entred his Armor, and drew blood: Orſon feeling himſelf wounded, ſmote off one of Florent's Arms: but yet he gave not over. Orſon eſpying him making a blow at him, made as if he would have ſtruck at Garnier, but ſuddenly withdrawing his arm, hit Florent in ſuch wiſe, that he fell down dead to the earth; and after ſaid unto Garnier, Traytor, thou ſhalt after, except thou confeſs the Treaſon. Not ſo Orſon, for I will be revenged on thee for my Brothers death: Haufray and Henry diſliked the match, and ſaid, one of our Nephews is ſlain, and if he overcome the other, he will cauſe him to confeſs the Treaſon, and thereby bring us in danger. Brother (ſaid Haufray) I will tell you what may be done; as ſoon as we perceive

Garnier

Garnier to be overcome, before he confess any thing, we will enter the Field, and make as if we come to chear up Orson, and we will cut off our Nephews head, and so the Treason shall not be known. Quoth Henry, be it so. Now are both the Champions at it in the Field. Garnier (said Orson) you see you cannot escape my hands, therefore confess the Treason, and I will save your life. Boy (quoth Garnier) thy fair Promises are little worth, for seeing that I have lost an Ear, I little respect any place of Honour; so rather chusing to die valiantly, or conquer thee, I set down my rest, that here I will finish my Fortunes, either to conquer or be conquered. Agreed (quoth Orson) and sith Death is so welcom to thee, defend thy self, for this shall be the longest day of thy life: and thus he makes at Garnier, and by strength of arms threw him under him, and pulled off his Helm. Haufray seeing there was no way but one, cried out, Orson slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, and we will do such Justice upon him, as to so foul an Act appertaineth: and Haufray said unto Garnier, Nephew confess the Fact, and we will be a means unto the King for your Pardon. Lord, said Garnier, I did put the Knife into the Kings bed: in speaking these words, Haufray drew out his sword, running him thorow; and after said, Lords, let this Traitor be hanged on the Gallows, as he hath well deserved: but Cosin Orson, I am glad of your Victory, for it proveth you innocent: and though Garnier were my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my blood. News coming to the Lady Fezon, she was glad of Orsons Victory; King Pepin also came, saying, Nephew, you have endured dangerous wounds. Uncle quoth Orson, the Traitors are banquished, and Haufray made Garnier to confess the Treason, and so killed him. Nephew, beware of that Haufray, for he hath surely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The King and the Barons returned into the City of Paris, and made great joy for the Victory: Haufray and Henry spake well of him, but in their hearts they imagined mischief, which after came to light, and they had their desert: where we leave them, and return to Valentine, who rode from place to place to find out Clerimond. Valentine having travelled long, at last arrived in the City of Antioch, thinking to find Clerimond; Pacolet being with him, could speak their language, & took up their lodging in a great mans house, but the Host of the House was somewhat doubtful,

doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, he would hearken, insomuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of Antioch, and said: Sir, there are four Christians in my House, that have entred your Land without paying of Tribute. The King said, Thou hast well done, let them be brought before me; so being sent for, he said unto Valentine: Christian I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must take choice of, or else suffer death. What is it (quoth Valentine) for I will do any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath devoured many men: she is bigger then a House, winged like a Fowl, feathered like a Gryffon, the Head of a Serpent, a great sting within her mouth, a fierce look, the Skin covered with red Scales, and she hath the feet of a Lyon. Quoth Valentine, this is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your Mahometry, and become Christians: the King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there were never any yet returned alive that attempted it. Sir (quoth Valentine) let me have a bout or two with this Monster. Then he caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastened a great number of long Spikes of Steel, a foot long, as sharp as Needles.

This Shield being made, Valentine put on Armor, and buckling on his Helm, girded his Sword to his side, took leave of his men, and mounting his Horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, every one got up into their Windows to behold the Fight. Now they of the City were fain to provide for the Dragon, either the Carkeals of a Man or of a Beast, which if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City: but having eaten her prey, she would return into her Den again, without doing any harm. All such Malefactors as any way had deserved death, were continually thrown unto this fearful Monster; but if they had no Malefactors, then they went to the Seaside, for to take any Christians, if they happened to come on Shore, and they were brought to be devoured of the Dragon.

Now by this time is Valentine within the sight of the Dragon, she seeing one come towards her, closed her Wings most fiercely, casting out of her mouth smoak like fire. Then he discerned from his

horse,

horſe, and left his ſharp Axe at his Saddle-bow, and went toward the Serpent, thinking to have ſmitten her, but ſhe lifted up her Paw to ſmite Valentine, who ſubtilly watching his opportunity, lifted up his Shield (armed as you have heard with Pikes) and ſo the Serpent hoached her foot upon them, who feeling her ſelf hurt, ſhe cryed out moſt horribly, drawing back, and recoiling. Valentine purſued, but when the Serpent ſee him approach, ſhe roſe on her feet, and thought to have beaten down Valentine with her fore-feet under her, but fearing the ſhield, ſhe ran back. The King beholding this, ſaid: See yonder is a moſt valiant Knight, whom we ought to reverence for his hardineſs. Ally, the fair Queen Rozamond fell in love with Valentine, to ſee him ſo adventurous.

Now grew the battel fierce and dangerous between Valentine and the Dragon, but ſtill ſhe fearing the pricks of the Shield, by which he held her play; in the one hand he bare his Shield, and the other his Sword, wherewith he gave the Serpent a marvellous blow under the ear, but with the blow he broke his Sword. Valentine was in great danger when his Sword was broken, for the beaſt grew ſo angry, that

that with her paw she rent his Armor quite through. Valentine still pursued her, and drew forth a knife, and struck it in her Throat, but she little regarded it: Valentine seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Axe at his Saddle bow, and returning unto her, subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the Serpent such a blow with his Axe, that he cut off most part of her Tail, whereat she roared most hideously. After this she flew at Valentines head, and pulling off his Helm, smote him to the ground, but he quickly getting up, was half amazed at his head uncovered: Pacolet perceiving his Master in distress, got into the City, and put himself in arms, got another helm, and bare it to his Master; Valentine perceiving him, said: Friend, I am well nigh spent, go thy ways, and commend me to my Friends, for if thou stay here, thou must dye with me. But for all this, Pacolet came to Valentine, and delivered the helm: the Serpent seeing that, came to Pacolet, and taking him by the right Leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a crush with her paw, that he felt it through his Armor, and had slain him, had not Valentine with his Axe cut off her Nose, and put out one of her eyes: these hurts made the Beast mad, and opening her Wings, she flew to the top of a high Rock: Then went Valentine to his Helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the Beast came flying down, and he was fain to cover his head with his Shield, which the Dragon espying, returned again to the Rock. Then Pacolet put on Valentines Helm, and said: Sir, I am sore wounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some relief, for my heart faileth: so they took leave. As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assailed Valentine, and flying directly at his head, thought to have laid hold thereon, but Valentine threw his Axe so right, that he cut off one of her wings, whereby she could not flye. The Dragon being down, Valentine quickly smote off the other Wing; so that the Battle was most violent between them, insomuch as he was not able to lift up his arm any longer to wield his Axe, but leaving all, he got up into a Tree to rest his wearied Limbs, and the Beast not able any more to flye, beheld him with a cruel countenance, casting out of her mouth nothing but stinking vapours. Valentine being well refreshed, came down, and went towards the Dragon, that ran fiercely at him: Valentine still put the Shield before him, and with his Axe cut her

left

left Thigh, wherewithal he fell to the earth. Valentine still pursues his strooks, and ran his Axe so far in her Throat, that she fell down dead. Valentine having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called unto him, and said; Of all Knights thou art the most hardie, for by thy Valour is our City delivered of a fearful Enemy, that hath much damaged us: With these words they entred the City, and so to the Palace, where a solemn Feast was held. Then the King caused Valentine's Wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamoured on him so hotly, that for to gain his Love, she would have wrought the Death of the King her Husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his Wounds within the City of Antioch, he said unto the King; Sir, you remember your promise, that you and your people would receive Baptism if I overcame the Dragon; you see she is slain by me only. True (quoth the King) and look what I promised, I will performe: and thereupon sent this present Edict throughout the Land, that every one should forsake Mahomet, and be Baptized. The Queen sent for Valentine to her Chamber, who presently went to her, and said; Lady, I am come at your command, and ready to do you service. Ah! said the Lady, thou art of great Hardiness, Wisdom, Strength, and all Beatitudes belonging to a famous Warrior, happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy Love: O that I were not a Woman, or a Woman not under Subjection. O! I could love thee beyond humane Reason, hadst thou but so much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me love. Lady, I thank you, but you have Wedded a puissant King, and him only ought you to love and honour. Knight, 'tis true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I first beheld thee, all my thoughts were captivated. Valentine seeing the Queen so eager, replied, Lady, if the King should but know or suspect me, I should surely be put to Death. Again, he is old, you are young, rest your self content till I return from my intended Journey to the Holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead, I willingly give my self unto you. Hereupon she played the part of many Women that are weary of their Husbands for the love of others: even so began this Queen to practise, for one night as the Queen was going to bed, a cup of Wine was brought unto her (as the custom was), wherein he had conveyed

poyſon, and after preſented it unto the King: but he having ſome doubt thereof, diſliked it, ſaying, Lady, look what Drink you have brewed, either drink it your ſelf, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity, knew not what to ſay, but falling on her knees, craved pardon, and ſaid, that Valentine procured her to do it. I do believe thee, quoth the King, and pardon thee: ſo they lay together that Night; but ſhe ſtill requeſted that Valentine might be put to death: He ſhall as ſure as I live, quoth the King. She hearing the King ſay ſo, was very ſorrowful, and ſecretly calling to one of her Maidens, ſent to Valentine to tell him her will, and what the King had decreed againſt him: Valentine hearing of this Accuſation wherein he was innocent, ſaid, What will not a Woman undertake? Now for the love of the Queen muſt I depart like a Traitor, or elſe lay her ſhame open to the World; well, I will rather depart with diſhonour to my ſelf, than her. And therewithal calling up his Attendants, before the Morning he departed the City, and came to the Sea-ſide, where lay a Ship full of Paſſengers, ready to put off; in amongſt the reſt goes he and his company; ſo hoiſing Sails, they departed. On the morrow when the King was up, he cauſed all his Nobles to be aſſembled, and ſaid unto them, Lords, I am moſt deceived in the man whom I moſt truſted, and he whom in heart I held deareſt, hath betraied me, Valentine I mean, who for to gain the lewdeſt Love of my Queen, hath ſtirred her up to poyſon me; therefore let us proceed to judge him to ſome ſhameful death.

Amongſt the reſt, an aged wiſe Baron ſaid, We have no reaſon to proceed againſt an Offender, without calling him to anſwer. Again, were he never ſo great and Offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon Valentine was ſent for, but inſtead of Valentine came his Hoſt, who told them Valentine was gone before the break of the Day from his houſe, but whether he knew not. The King hearing this, ſuddenly ſent forth men to follow and purſue him, but all in vain, for he was paſt their reach on the Sea.

Shortly after that the King of Antioch was converted, his wifes Father Brandiffer, a Turk, had ſo great a Spleen againſt the King, for altering his Religion, that he ſent to him for his Daughter Rozamond. When the King heard this unjuſt demand, he gainſaid him, hereupon Brandiffer came upon him with a 100000 Pagans, and beſieged

beſieged his City. At laſt within the compaſs of four Months, by Treaſon he obtained it, took the King priſoner, and ſuddenly put him to death, and Crowned himſelf King of Antioch. This done, he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempeſt he was forced into the Land of Greece, into a little City called Cretophe.

Within this City by chance was the Emperor of Greece newly arrived then, and he and the Dæn Knight, with ſome other Company rid forth to ſport themſelves, not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the hands of Brandiffers Souldiers, and having gotten them, haſted towards the Gates of the City, thinking to have ſeized the whole City, but they found it manfully defended.

The Men of Cretophe were very ſorrowful for the loſs of the Emperor and the Dæn Knight. At laſt they determined to ſend Letters unto Beliſant of what had happen, and to demand aid againſt their Pagans. The Lady receiving theſe Letters, was wondrous ſad, and ſending for their Captains and Men of War, made preparation for a ſpeedy revenge. Alſo ſhe ſent for her Son Orſon, and craved aid of her Brother King Pepin. Being thus in readineſs, they were ſent to the ſuccour of the Emperor: but Brandiffer, had Scours abroad to give him notice of all that happen, and fearing the force of the Greeks, and their Priſoners loſs, they ſtole to the Sea-ſide, ſo taking Ship, they in ſhort time arrived at Lize, in which place they took a Caſtle, wherein was kept his two Daughters, Rozamond and Galazy, who for her Beauty had been demanded of ſundry Kings; Brandiffer had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore he cauſed her to be kept within this Caſtle, for it was the ſtrongeſt in the Land; for it had a Bridge made by ſuch cunning Art, that but one could paſs at a time: At the end of this Bridge two fierce Lions tied to keep the entry into this Caſtle: The Lady Galazy was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperor and the Dæn Knight, with other Chriſtians, which had been there a long time, were put. Where leave we them, and we ſhall ſhew you ſomewhat of the fair Lady Clermond, which ſtill remained in Inde.

CHAP. XLVI.

How *Clerimond* after the year was paſt, feigned her ſelf mad, becauſe ſhe would not wed the King of *Inde:* And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the King of *Inde*; and how King *Lucar* in the City of *Eſclardy* wedded *Rozamond* the fair Daughter of *Brandiffer*; and how *Valentine* departed from *Eſclardy*, to breathe out Defiance; and of the Anſwer he brought from the *Indian* King: and how *Rozamond* found away to be taken and led unto the *Indian* King; and how King *Lucar* cauſed *Brandiffer* to ſtay with him, and ſent *Valentine* into *Angory* againſt King *Pepin*; and how King *Pepin* took the City of *Angory*.

YOu have heard already of the Death of King Trompart, who ſtole away the Lady Clerimond upon Pacolet's Horſe: alſo how ſhe got pardon for one whole year before ſhe would marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no ſuccour for her relief, which ſhe had ſo long expected: therefore (my Lady) now is ſhe put to her ſhifts, and to ſave her Maidenhead, ſhe feigned her ſelf very ſick. This news came to the Kings Ear, that the fair Clerimond was extream ſick, at which he grew very ſad, and came to viſit her, at laſt he would have put his hand upon her head, to have held it, but ſhe reſiſting, took his arm, and lift up her head her ſelf, making ſigns that ſhe would bite him, at which action he wondred, and grew much aſtonied thereat.

After this ſhe rowled her Eyes up and down, and made grievous faces, in ſuch wiſe, that the King got him out of the Chamber, fearing leaſt ſhe ſhould prove mad. In this manner ſhe abode along time, and ſhe did act the matter ſo well, that within fifteen days ſhe ſeemed more like a beaſt than a woman: ſhe made all her Attendants forſake her, for if ſhe caught them, ſhe would leave ſome mark behind her; ſo they left her alone, giving her meat at the window, for none would come near her. One while ſhe put her Smock uppermoſt, anon ſhe bedawbed her face with Soot, and in this eſtate the King came and beheld her, lamenting her diſtemper, and ſaid unto her; Lady, now is the time come that I ſhould have had you to Wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady underſtanding him well, made ſhew as if ſhe would beat him:

him, but then ſhe fell into a ſtrange fit of madneſs: one while ſhe would run againſt the Chimney, another while fall into a great laughter, then ſit down and make faces, and all to preſerve her Chaſtity. Many waies was tried for her recovery, yet none prevailed: ſo leave we her in her Chamber, and return to Valentine, who with a ardent deſire is roved abroad, accompanied with Pacolet, to find out the Lady Clerimond. Long have they travelled to find out the Lady Clerimond, and now were they arrived in Eſclardy, which was the Kingdom of Trompart, who carried away the Lady on Pacolets Horſe. Being in the City, they asked for King Trompart, ſo they told him he was ſlain by the King of Inde, and that now at this preſent, Lucar his Son would revenge his death upon the King of Inde, and to that end he had newly muſtered up his powers, and wages many Royal Kings to undertake this War. Then ſpake Pacolet, who well underſtood the language, ſaying; Of what account is this King Lucar? for the Hoſt where he lay told him, that he ſhould ſhortly marry with the daughter of Brandiffer, that was late Wife to the King of Antioch, who was ſlain by Brandiffer, for that he forſook his Religion.

At this tale Valentine was much abaſhed, and wondred at this ſudden alteration, but at laſt he ſaid; Know ye not what is become of the Lady that King Trompart did bring with him? Of her we hear no tydings (quoth the Hoſt:) tell me then where is King Lucar at this preſent, I would fain ſerve under him for wages, for my money is fallen ſhort, and I have a great deſire to follow the wars. Marry, ſaid the Hoſt, King Lucar is in Eſclardy, and there you ſhall find him accompanied with a huge Hoaſt, and attendeth Brandiffer to receive his daughter in Wedlock. Valentine knowing all this, he hoped to hear of Clerimond; and ſo he departed, and came to Eſclardy, to ſerve King Lucar.

Lucar being in the City of Eſclardy, thither came Brandiffer with his daughter, at ſight of whom King Lucar was joyful, but the Lady was ſad, for of all other ſhe could never effect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married unto King Lucar. Valentine was abroad, and entring a Wood, he heard the crying voice of a Woman, whom a Sarazen would have raviſhed: Valentine ſtill heard the cry, and ſaid unto Pacolet: Ride faſter, for this cry is more and more in my ear, and we ſhall do a Charitable deed, in relieving the oppreſſed.

oppressed. Sir, said Pacolet, meddle not in this matter, for you know not what danger you may be drawn into.

Pacolet, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of necessity: so he rode up and down the wood, till at last he lighted on the Sarazen, that had gotten a Lady under him. Then Valentine said: My Friend, forsake your Lady, and betake you to your arms, to Combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not. By Mahomet, quoth the Pagan, I accept of this thy Challenge, and will make thee know that in an evil hour camest thou hither. These words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his Horse, and then took his Shield and Spear, and being prepared, they set out one at the other so fiercely, that Valentine ran his Spear quite through the body of the Pagan, insomuch as he fell down dead. Then went Valentine to the Maiden, saying: Damosel, now is your enemy laid in the dust, but I pray shew me the cause why this man brought you into this Wood: Sir, I will tell nothing save the truth: So it was, that yester-night late he came unto my fathers house to lodge, and there attempting the use of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the Chamber of my Father, and there slew him. Afterward he thought he should surely have got his will on me, in this manner as you see, from which by your manhood I am freed, and mine honour saved; do with me what pleaseth you, for your body hath ransomed mine, and besides, as you have won me, I yield me to your pleasure.

Damosel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong, return unto your house, and keep well your Chastity. So Valentine left the Maiden, and took his way towards Esclardy. This slain Pagan had certain attendants which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they found him dead, they told his misfortune to the King, saying: our Master, and your Marshal lies slain in the Wood. The King was hereat right heavy, and presently sent out a search, to see if they could find the Murtherer. At last Valentine and his company were taken, bound, and beaten by the Kings Commandment. Now in this Castle was Rozamond, who knew Valentine, and was very sorrowful for him, and anon she went unto the King, and said: Alas Sir, do this Knight no harm, for I know he is the valiantest Knight breathing, he is called Valentine of France, that slew the mighty Dragon before the City of

Antioch;

Antioch; make much of him, and retain him into your ſervice, for his Fellow lives not in the World. Lady (ſaid the King) divers times have I heard much talk of his prowels, and I have much deſired to have a ſight of him. Then he called Valentine unto him, and ſaid: Knight, fear not death, but know that above all men, I love and hold you dear, you and all yours I receive into my pay: yet one thing ſtill remaineth, that you muſt do for me, which is: That you go into Inde, and defie the King thereof in my name, telling him: that I am ready prepared to avenge the death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to death, except he come preſently before me with a rope about his Neck, ready to receive ſuch ſentence, as by me and my Barons ſhall be impoſed upon him: if he deny it, tell him I will ſhortly viſit him and his Land with War, and not leave one Town or Village unranſaked, nor ſpare the life of any. Sir (ſaid Valentine) all this ſhall I gladly do, although I know it to be a dangerous adventure.

The Queen Rozamond ſeeing Valentine ready to depart, entred into her Chamber and by one of her Damſels ſent for him; when he came to her, he ſaluted her with great reverence, and ſhe ſaid to him: Knight, you are welcome, for I had a great deſire to ſee you. So had I Lady (quoth Valentine) as great a deſire to ſee you: for ſince I ſaw you, I underſtand your Husband is dead, and that you are newly married again. Lady, you know that for the love of you within Antioch I ſuſtained much danger of life: 'Tis true (ſaid the Lady) and I acknowledge my ſelf guilty, and it grew only out of love to you. But now hath my Father beſtowed me to King Lucar, who is rich above meaſure, yet can I not fancy him, he is a perfidious Traitor, and ſince you entred this Palace, he grows ſo jealous of you, that he ſends you into Inde, truſting you ſhall never return, for never yet took any back again alive: But I will circumvent him, and ſet you at from danger. Therefore know this, that not long ago the King of Inde requeſted me for his Wife, and the truth is, I loved him better then this Traitor, but my Father croſſed me in it: now this King of Inde in token of Love, ſent me a Ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not ſhewed to any, ſave your ſelf, but ſeeing I perceive the malice of Lucar towards you, I will give you that which ſhall defend you from Danger, and make you return a victorious Knight;

Knight; and though I am assured you have no need of my love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my heart, which for your love lies enthralled. Therefore when you come before the King of Inde, this shall you do.

After reverence made, and salutations from K. Lucar, first greet him from me, as my Love and secret Friend, and tell him, that though my Father hath given me unto King Lucar, yet his love cannot once slip out of my breast, but still hath assurance, and full hope one Day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures: tell him also, that when King Lucar bringeth his Hoast, I will come with him, and then if there be any valour in him, he may carry me away whither he will. Now to the end he shall not find your words to be in vain, bear him this Ring. Lady (quoth Valentine) for your care, love, and good will towards me, I humbly thank you, and have no doubt, but that I shall deliver your message so effectually to the King of Inde, that you shall shortly receive answer therefor. So taking his leave, he went to King Lucar, who allowed him ten Marriners to conduct him over an arm of the Sea, that lieth between Esclardy and Inde, so that having a prosperous wind, the next morning they arrived at a Port two miles from the Palace of the King of Inde. Then Valentine being arrived, he drew forth his Horse out of the Ship, and backed him, and said unto the Marriners: Abide here till my return, for it shall not be long e're I be dispatched. One of the Marriners said unto the rest: If thou return, the Devil must bring thee, for of fifty Messengers, not one returned again. Valentine over-heard this muttering speech, but made no answer; so he took his way to the City: And when he was near the Palace he alighted off his Horse, and went to the King, who was in his Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three Kings. As he came up to the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled brow, and thought he was a Messenger of King Lucar, and therefor said aloud unto him: Art thou not a Servant of King Lucars? Sir (said Valentine) I am, and bring you such tidings as will fret your heart; but on the other side, I bring such gladsome news, that your very soul will leap to hear it, from the fair Rozamond. Messenger, know this, that in the spight of King Lucar thou should'st have suffered death, but for the love and reverence I owe unto that Lady, thou shalt receive no injury, if so it be, that

then

thou canſt ſhew me ſome Token from her. Yes, ſaid Valentine, that I ſhall ſhew you, and deliver my Meſſage with ſuch Applauſe, that I will not ſwerve from the truth therein. That I belong to King Lucar, you know, who by me ſendeth theſe words, That for the death of his Father, you muſt come and yield to his mercy, with a Rope about your Neck, as a man guilty of ſo foul a Deed, to receive Sentence of Death according to your Deſert; if you refuſe it (as a Meſſenger) I breath Defiance againſt you, and tell you that he will ſhortly come and lay waſte your Land, and ranſack your Dominions.

Meſſenger, I underſtand thee, and ſet light by theſe his bold threats: and for anſwer to this matter, thou ſhalt have Letters wherein ſhall be explained how little we regard his Menaces, and alſo how ready I am to receive his Forces that ſhall come to whip my Land: there leave you theſe proud brags, and return to that thou haſt to ſay, concerning the fair Lady Rozamond for I moſt of all deſire to hear from her. Sir (ſaid Valentine) on her behalf I ſalute you as her Love, and ſhe ſendeth you word, that ſhe is againſt her will married to King Lucar, whom ſhe never loved. Again, the poor Lady is ſo burdened with love towards you, that if ſhe might have her will, you ſhould ſoon perceive, that none ſhould enjoy her but you, if you be ſo content.

Now to come yet ſomewhat nearer, ſhe told me, that ſhe will come hither in the company of the King her Husband, when he taketh up Arms to invade you, and then may you find other means to accompliſh your deſire even as you would: By Mahomet, ſaies the Indian K. this pleaſeth me exceedingly. Sir (ſaid Valentine) whether theſe come from a true heart or no, I cannot tell, but for token that all is true that I have ſaid, receive here the Ring which you gave unto her, and though Women prove variable, yet methinks ſhe ſpeaks to you from her inward breaſt. Friend (quoth he) this is the ſame Ring indeed, and my heart is overcome with joy, go thy waies in, and take thy repaſt, while in the mean time I get the Letters ready, thou ſhalt take with thee to anſwer this Defiance.

Valentine went in as the King commanded, and was highly feaſted, and he ſtill demanded after Clerimond, but could not hear of her. By this time came the King, and delivered unto him the Letters, and Valentine taking his leave of him, knew not that his Love was in the Court, who abode many evil dales for the love of him, and ſtill

desired to hear some news of him. In the end he shall find her, but he must suffer many Tribulations and hard Atchievements, as you may afterwards hear more at large.

Valentine made great haste to be rowed out of Inde, and taking horse, he came to the Haven where the Mariners staied; at his coming they were amazed, and thought that he had done his Message: Masters (quoth Valentine) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my Message, and I am safely returned. Then the Mariners said, we much marvel thereat.

At these words he took Ship, and on the Morrow they were in Esclardy. Valentine made no stay, but as soon as he was descended his horse, he went to the Palace of the King, finding him there accompanied with King Brandiffer, and fourteen other Kings that were come to the succour of King Lucar, against the Indian King: At the return of Valentine they wondred, for the King sent him of purpose never to return, wherefore he made Valentine come before them all, to tell what Tidings of his Message. Valentine began thus to say, he regards not all your Threats a straw; he is fierce and proud, and says, if you have a mind to come to him, he hath a greater desire to receive you, than you have to come; and that you may know that I deliver nothing save the Truth, here is a Letter sealed with his own hand, in which you shall understand his mind more at large. This Letter being broken open, they found Valentines words to be true. King Brandiffer understanding his Answer, Swore by all the Gods, that he would never return home again but with Victory, or lose his life.

The next Morrow they betook them to the Seas, with an host of 200000 Sarazens. So the King carried Rozamond along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their Tents in a pleasant Field before the City, whilst they of the City made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their order, so by the River-side he might espy their rich Pavilions, gallantly furnished with Arms and Streamers; then the King called unto him certain Heralds of Arms, to know by those Arms, whose Tents they were. The first (quoth they) is Brandiffers, the second is Lucars, and the third is Rozamonds with her Ladies. When the King understood that Rozamond was there, his heart leapt for joy,

and

and ſaid, It is no time to ſleep now, he that will have the love of a fair Lady, muſt venture Life and Goods, or elſe he is not worthy of her, that will take no pains. Hereupon reſolving, he preſently put his men in Battel array, and ſuddenly iſſued out of the City upon his Enemies, ſo that they were not in a readineſs, for they little thought the Indian had been ſo fierce, but Love made him do it.

When the King ſaw Brandiffer ordering his Men in Battel array, he left his Companies, and with much diligence rode towards the Pavillion of the Ladies: Now when Rozamond beheld it was he, ſhe gave all the reſt of her Company the ſlip, and ran violently into his Arms, who joyfully received her. The Indian perceiving her good will, got her up behind him, and putting Spurs to his Horſe, ſhe ſaid, My love is fixed only on you, and for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated man ſo much as I did King Lucar; but now I pray thee, let me bid him farewel, and I will keep my ſelf only to thee ſo long as I live: Lady, quoth the Indian, doubt not, for I will not fail you, and here I vow, e're three days paſs you ſhall be Queen of Inde, and Miſtris of all my Lands. Theſe words paſſed as he was riding away with the Lady Rozamond. At laſt the Guard of the Maidens came out of the Pavillion, and ran to the King, ſaying, My Lord, there is evil Tidings, for this day you have loſt your fair Lady Rozamond, for the King of Inde your utter Enemy hath ſtollen her hence, and is ridden away with her, wherefore quickly lead your Men of War and follow him, that they may ſave the honour of your Queen. Hold your peace, ſaid Lucar, and talk no more, for he that hath an evil Wife, it is well if he can be ſo rid of her, although he had a heavy heart. After this he went to King Brandiffer, and ſaid, Sir, I have ſmall joy of your Daughter, who hath left me, to run away with a ſtranger, and one that is mine Enemy, leaving me in reproach and ſhame. Fair Son (ſaid Brandiffer) be not diſcontent at me, for to day I will be revenged on him that carried her away. So putting Spurs to his horſe, rid after him, gathering a great company of men. Amongſt the reſt, Valentine was one, willing to ſhew his fidelity, who ſaid unto Pacolet, now ſhew me by thy Art ſomewhat. Then Pacolet reared ſuch a Charm, which ſo dimmed the Indians Eye-ſight, that it ſeemed to him there was nothing before his horſe, but Woods Bushes, and great Rivers. At this he was ſo amazed, that he

made the Lady alight; when the Queen was on the ground, she thought she should have had means to save her Life with the King, but Valentine was so near her, that he said unto her; Lady, abide, for you must go with me, for that you have along time promised me your love. Ah, Valentine, I owe you but little love, for once I made love unto you, and you refused me, wherefore I was forced to seek another, but seeing I am crolled thus, I yield my self as your Vassal, so you will make my peace with Lucar.

Lady (said Valentine) I will do my endeavour; so he led her to King Lucar, and said unto him; Sir, here is the Lady Rozamond your Wife, whom the Indian Traitor had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowful: Sir (quoth the Lady) he telleth you true, for even as the Battel was begun, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons, that had come to succour me, and without any further enquiry, mounted on his horse: being on horseback, I perceived that then I was betraied, so I strugled and pulled him by the hair, and scratched him by the face, and forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good Knight escaped. Lady (said Lucar) you have well done; and at this present we have no leasure to enquire further hereof: so he left the Lady, and returned to the Battel. They of Inde returned into the City, who had lost divers valiant Leaders, but none so fretted the Indian at the heart, as did the loss of Rozamond. Alas, Lady (said he) I have failed thee in thy greatest extreamity, but I was surely Enchanted, and on the sudden methought I saw Woods, Fields, and Rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the ground, but all was plain and even way before me. Valentine had great praise for getting again the Lady, and she shewed him a fair Countenance, in that he had succoured her, but it was all feigned, for she hated him to death, and putting up this mischance, she watched her time, and in the end accomplished her desire, and brought her Will to execution.

It is a common saying, Women seldom want Deceit, as here it appeareth in Rozamond, for some four Years after, she rode forth of her Tent, pretending to take the Air, but took her way toward the King of Inde, and had given him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his Prisoner, and so carry her away. The King did accord-

ing

ing to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her horse by the head, and carried her into the City.

Hereupon began a cry throughout the host of King Lucar, that Rozamond was surprized, and she was past recovery. This madded Lucar at the heart, and gave out, that whosoever would recover her out of his hands, should be made a great Senechal: Sir (said Pacolet) if you please to atchieve dignity, I will to work, that we will fetch her back? Nay, said Valentine, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her Husband, but all was in vain. The same day that the King had her, he lay with her, and begat a Son called Rabestre, who afterward had the possession of Jerusalem. Lucar was right sorrowfull for the loss of his Wife, but Brandiffer his Father recomforted him, saying; Son, take courage, and let us now be revenged before we depart; but it fell out otherwise, for that day came a Messenger to him, who brought him contrary tidings; which was, that King Pepin of France, and the Emperor of Greece was entred his Land, burning and spoiling many places, and were now upon the siege of Angory, in which City his Lady now lay in Child-bed: therefore you must presently take course to restrain the fury of the enemy, or else endure such wrack as were lamentable to behold.

Brandiffer hereat amazed, went unto his Son Lucar, and said, Son, here is evil tidings befallen, the French are entred my Land, wasting and destroying all things, therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own: but let me tell you what you shall do; send some Knight unto the Indian, to demand your Wife, upon this condition, that you will first forget the death of your Father, and that you will raise your siege and be gone. Wherefore he sent Valentine unto the King of Inde, to declare this message. He being come before him, said, Great King, I am come from King Lucar, who saies, that if you will restore his Wife back again, he will forget his Fathers death, and will raise up his siege and be gone. To whom the Indian thus replyed: If he will have a Wife, he must go seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her: Valentine having thus received this answer, he departed, and came to King Lucar, telling him all that the Indian had said, which grieved him to the very heart.

Lucar having by this means caused Brandiffer to stay with him, sent

sent Valentine and Murgalant to raise the siege which King Pepin had laid against Angory. And as they were under sail, Valentine espying a glittering Tower, asked what it might be. Then the Mariners described the manner and fashion of it to him. Now they were come within the sight of King Pepins Tents, and Murgalant having viewed the Christians forces, found the number to be great: then said Valentine, Let us secretly send to the City, to acquaint them with our coming, that to morrow morning they may issue out at that side, and we will back them on this side, that none may escape our hands. Pacolet standing by, said, Let me be the Messenger, for I can speak their Language. Quoth Murgalant, go thy way; So Pacolet departed, but (he said to himself) by to morrow night you will sing another song. Pacolet being come to the very gates of the City of Angory, the warders thought him to be some Spy, wherefore they demanded of him, saying, Whither goes this Fellow? he looks as if he were some Spy: 'tis true (quoth Pacolet) but I come not for your hurt, therefore bring me into the Hoast of King Pepin, that I may speak with my Lord Orson, for I have a matter of great import to acquaint him withal. So they brought him into the presence of Orson, who espying him, was right joyous, and said, How fares my Brother Valentine? Then Pacolet told him of all his adventures that he had passed since they saw one another, and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, and how he could hear no tidings of Clerimond, and told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with 10000 Pagans, under the conduct of Valentine and Murgalan, and to chase you out of these confines, by the command of King Lucar and King Brandiffer, but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the Pagans shoot home. Quoth Orson, do as thou hast said, and win immortal praise to thy Posterity: Sir, said Pacolet, I am bound in all duty to your Brother Valentine, but the service that I shall now undertake, will highly please you; first, stand you still upon your guard, and in the night put all your men in readiness, and for that Valentine shall not be suspected to be in the Plot, he shall continue in his Tent, whilst I cast a strong sleep on the Sarazens, and then may you come upon them and slay every man. It is good said Orson, so Orson led him to King Pepin to make him acquainted with the enterprize, & Pacolet was royally entertained for

that

that time now Pacolet, to the end there ſhould grow no miſtruſt, gave certain ſigns to Murgalant. Being in the City he found out the Admiral Burnas, and ſaluted him with great reverence, and delivered unto him the Meſſage which he had brought from Murgalant, which was, that of Brandiffers part were now arrived, 100000, and Murgalant ſends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you have your men in a readineſs, to aſſail the Chriſtians on the one ſide of the City, and Murgalant will aſſail them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a man of them eſcape. The Admiral was glad to hear theſe tidings, but he knew not how this ſhould come to paſs; Pacolet took his leave of him, and returned back again unto Murgalant with ſalutations from the Admiral: ſo Murgalant gave him great thanks for his meſſage, and Pacolet departed ſecretly to ſpeak with Valentine. When he was come, he ſaid thus unto him; Your Brother Orſon, and your Uncle King Pepin greet you well by me, to whom I have related the whole manner of your coming, becauſe I would have them well and ready prepared; but Pacolet would not let him know the Plot he had in hand, for he durſt not reveal any Treaſon unto Valentine. The night is come, wherein this bloody Stratagem is to be acted, ſo Valentine commanded the Watch to be ſtrongly ſet, and would be in the Watch himſelf, but Pacolet found a way to prevent him, and cauſed him to abide in the Tent. In the dead time of the night Pacolet went amongſt the Pagans, and caſt ſuch a Charm, that they fell aſleep. This opportunity was not let ſlip by King Pepin, for he with his Army entred the Hoaſt with 60000 fighting men, and ſet fire amongſt the Tents and Pavilions; and killed all that reſiſted: At laſt they came to the Tent of Murgalant, who lay aſleep in his Bed, and being ſuddenly affrighted, ſkipped out, and one received his body on a Dart, and ſo he fell down dead.

This aſſault being given on the Sarazens, Pacolet ſaid unto Valentine, ſeek to ſave your ſelf, for the Chriſtians have killed the watch, and entred the Hoaſt. Pacolet (ſaid Valentine) thou haſt made me break my promiſe with Brandiffer, for which I ſhall hardly eſcape. Fear not, quoth Pacolet, for he ſhall do no harm. The morrow after, Brubans iſſued out of Angory, and ſet upon Pepins Hoaſt, who knew not what had happened. The Battel grew both fierce and long: At laſt the

the Admiral couched his Spear, and running against a Knight of Bay, struck him stark dead, and after that, with his Sword he slew Gyrald of Paris: then came he against Robert of Normandy; and lopt off his Leg. At last King Pepin met with him, and couching his Spear, he ran him quite through: The Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the City, the Christians following them, but they defended themselves so valiantly with shot, that the Christians were fain to forsake the Walls: but by some other Stratagems they won the City, putting all the Sarazens to the Sword: within this City was great Riches, which was divided among the Souldiers.

CHAP. XLVII.

How *Valentine* returned back to *India*, after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of King *Murgalant*, and how he heard tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian* King, and left *Brandiffer* in Prison. And how King *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian*, to be drawn to death at horses Tails, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his Hoast, and went to *Angory*, and of the Vision of King *Pepin*, and how he went into the Holy-land with the twelve Peers of *France*, and what hapned. And how *Hausfray* and *Henry* betrayed their Father King *Pepin*, and the Twelve Peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas* made truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar*, and *Brandiffer*. And *Hausfray*, to further his Treason, came before *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, and how he was intrapped in his own net.

The City being taken by the Christians, Valentine finding the body of Murgalant in the field, caused it to be put up, and covered with black. After certain dates sail, they arrived where Lucar and Brandiffer were, and in mourning manner brought it before the two Kings, as they sat playing at Chess. As soon as King Lucar saw Valentine, he said: Knight, welcome home, how fareth our Sonnes, have you put all the Christians to the worst, and taken Pepin and his Nephew Orson? Alas, said Valentine, it is fallen out contrary, for we have lost the field, and all our men are slain. For King Farin that had the whole charge of the Watch, let his men sleep, and the Christians came and made great havock of our Army. As

soon

soon as I got any tidings hereof, I awaked my men, hoping to save them, but it was too late. In this battel was slain your Uncle Murgalant, whose body I have here brought. This spectacle fretted Brandiffer at the heart, that in madness he threw away the Chess-board, & said, Surely Valentine thou wert the cause of this. Ah Valentine, I return him the lye that saies so, & I will maintain my innocency with my sword. Nay (said K. Lucar) if he had plotted any treason he would never have come again, then Brandiffer commanded the body to be royally interred. This news gladded the Indian, & hereupon gathering up all his forces, he issued forth of the City. The battel being begun, Valentine threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand before him. At last, meeting the Indian K. he smote him off his horse: Pacolet seeing him down, Valentine and he led him unto the Tent of King Brandiffer: when tidings came that the Indian K. was taken, he called unto his men, saying: Follow hard and the day is our own: so they entred the battel, and drave the Indians to a retreat. When Brandiffer saw they withdrew themselves, they followed them to the gates, where fell on both sides a great slaughter. The battel lasted so long that it was night, & Brandiffer & Lucar betook them to their Tents, and bad that the Indian K. should be brought before them. When King Lucar saw him, he said unto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand. The Indian made shift to understand him, but said never a word.

King Lucar had no sooner ended his rough speech to the Indian K. but there arrived a Messenger: who said unto Brandiffer: I bring you sad tidings, O King! for Pepin King of France hath taken your City of Angory, and put unto the Sword, Man, Woman, and Child. These are ill tidings indeed (quoth Brandiffer) but seeing we have the King of Inde in subjection, I hope shortly to free mine own Countrey. Then he said unto King Lucar, Son, we have the King of Inde in hold, let us make short work with him, and to morrow morning let him be hanged up: which being done, we will speed unto Angory against the French, and take Vengeance for these wrongs done unto me. Also, I have there in a strong Castle, the Emperor of Greece and the Green Knight, Prisoners; who at my coming shall suffer death. Valentine being present, was glad to hear of his Father, so by a sign he acquainted Pacolet, that he should very shortly stand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed that

he would find ſome means to releaſe them out of Priſon. Alſo, the Indian King looked wiſtly on Valentine, and ſaid thus to himſelf; Curſed be that hour that thou eſcapedſt my hands, for had I put thee unto death, theſe dangers had never befallen me: Then King Lucar called a ſtrong Guard of Armed Sarazens, and ſaid unto them, keep well this Traitor, and to morrow he ſhall be Hanged. So they took him and brought him into one of the Pavillions, and bound him about the middle to a Poſt, and ſo left him, calling to play again. Now Valentine called Pacolet unto him, ſaying. I am half in doubt whether Brandiffer have my Father in hold, for if I were aſſured thereof, I would not have indangered my body as I have done in his ſervice: but now is the time to be revenged. Sir (quoth Pacolet) you have ſmall reaſon to bear him good will, therefore (if ſo you pleaſe) I will find away to free the Indian King, and to deliver Brandiffer into his hands, ſo may your Uncle Pepin hold Angory ſtill. This (qd. Valentine) would be worthy of thanks, wherefore proſecute thy plot, that ſo I may help mine Uncle, and deliver my Father: Pacolet having an eye to what he would do, after Supper came among thoſe hundred that had the charge of the Indian King. After they had made a Fire without the Pavillion, Pacolet caſt them all into a deep ſleep. Having ſo done, he went to the Indian King, and ſaid: Noble King, be glad in me, for I am Mahomet, and am come to ſet thee free. Then go thou to thy Palace, and bear along with thee Brandiffer, who ſhall not know whether he goeth. Alas (ſaid the Indian to Pacolet) taking him for Mahomet) it ſhould ſeem that I have deſerved well at thy hands, when thou tookeſt ſo much pains to come down and deliver me from death and mine enemies. King (ſaid Pacolet) truſt in me, and believe the Counſel of thy Wife. Herewith Pacolet led him towards Brandiffer, cauſing all the Watch to fall into a dead ſleep, and ſo Enchanted him, that he aroſe, made him ready, and went along with the Indian King into his Pallace.

The Indian being thus ſet free, gave thanks to Mahomet for his delivery: then Pacolet brought him a Horſe, made him mount, and ſet Brandiffer behind him, and ſent them packing for India, & ſo took his leave. At laſt the Indian came to the Gates of his own City, & calling the Porter was inſtantly let in: when Rozamond beheld him, ſhe ſaid: Sir, you are right welcome home, but tell me how you came by my Father, that you have brought him with you, is there a Peace con-

cluded?

cluded? No (quoth the King) Mahomet delivered him into my hands, and freed me from death. So by this time ended the vigour of the Charm, and Brandiffer awaking, began to ſay: how came I hither? ſome Devil hath Enchanted me: nay, ſaid the King, Mahomet hath brought us hither, that you may be at Peace with me: I had rather die, therefore let me free, that I may go to my Hoaſt again. Not ſo, for ſince you are here, I mean to keep you. Now the Sarazens that Guarded the Indian, lay ſtill aſleep. At the break of day Lucar came to the Pavilion where the Indian lay, but when the Pagans ſaw him, they cry for mercy, for they had loſt their Priſoner. Varlets, quoth Lucar, your lives ſhall pay for it, ſo he cauſed them to be drawn along the ſtreets at horſes tails, & after hanged, whereat Pacolet laughed, but Valentine ſaid: Friend, I ſhall never be at eaſe till I have found out my Father, whom Brandiffer keepeth in priſon. Here Valentine & Pacolet leave the Pagans, & after travell to hear tidings of the Lady Clerimond.

You have heard before, how King Pepin took Angory, ſo now will I make plain to you the manner of a Treaſon toward him by Haufray and Henry, it happened as the King was in his bed in Angory, he had a Dream to this effect: he thought that he beheld a Wals-priеſt, ſhewing unto him divers Relicks, beſides a ſumptuous Sepulchre, and three times this Apparition troubled him: the Morning being now come, he called before him all his Barons, and declared unto them the manner of this Dream, & ſaid unto them: Lords, I know not what may befal, but I think it ſome Deluſion, or elſe it may be that I ſhould go viſit the Holy places without the City of Hieruſalem. Then ſpake Orſon, I will go with you if you pleaſe, & I alſo, quoth Myllon Daugler: after the Twelve Peers offered themſelves unto him, to aſſiſt him in his Pilgrimage. The King hearing them ſo forward, gave them thanks, and calling before him Haufray & Henry, he ſaid unto them: Haufray you know you are my Natural Son, but yet in ſuch time was you gotten, when I had not one foot of Land in France, therefore it is my will that you enjoy this Land of Angory, therefore keep it valiantly.

Then Haufray ſaid to Henry, Brother, you underſtand the K. our Father well, do you not? he will prefer us to ſtrange Lands, as if we were not worthy to be his Sons: now as for his young Son Charles, he provideth to leave him King of France, & we muſt be content with a Forraign part: therefore be ruled by me, & Pepin ſhall never return

into France to establish his Heir. We will work a plot to deliver him into the hands of the Pagans, and then shall we be King of France, and Emperor of Rome, all which I thirst after. Brother (qd. Henry) your words are well put together, but how shall this thing be accomplished: Haufray said, I shall tell ther how: Go unto King Brandiffer, and tell him that I must have his daughter Galazy, and being with him, tell him that King Pepin and the twelve Peers of France, do determine to go to the Holy Sepulchre, & they may be easily surprized, for they take along with them but a few in train. Brother, this will do well, wherefore make haste to India, there shall you find Lucar and Brandiffer: when you have found them, acquaint them with the plot, and I will go along with them. So so, qd. Haufray, for I shall never be at quiet, till this business be finished. Thus had they plotted treason against their father, who had now entred the Seas, thinking to accomplish their Pilgrimage. Henry going along with them; and Haufray hath likewise taken his way towards India. So leave we them and return to other matters.

The Caliph of Bendas, being come into the Hoft of Brandiffer & Lucar, treated a truce for a month between them and the King of Inde: so appointing a day to meet thereupon, the Caliph began thus to say: Lords, it is known unto you, that the Christians have won the Realm of Angory, wherefore I wonder that you continue here, maintaining a needless War, and suffer the enemy to grow upon you, in a place of such import: therefore lit a while to what I shall declare: True it is that the King of Inde slew your father Trompart, for that he killed his Uncle: this was one for another. Therefore let the Indian deliver Brandiffer, and as for Rozamond, let her be brought & set between the two Kings, Lucar and the Indian: and if she will stay with the Indian, let her; if she will go with Lucar, let him receive her. This his counsel was generally accepted, & Rozamond was brought forth, whereupon the Caliph propounded the matter for which she was called. Rozamond having heard what was said, she resolved to keep her to the Indian King, and Lucar departed away very sorrowful.

The same day that the Caliph made this confession, Haufray came unto the Hoft of Lucar & Brandiffer, and making haste to their Pavilions, he saluted them, unto whom Brandiffer said: What wind hath driven you hither? Sir, said Haufray, that I have to deliver, craveth secresie & attention. So they drew from their attendants, & then Haufray said,

said, Lords, you all know that I am Son to Pepin of France, and I also understand that you (speaking to Brandiffer) have a beautiful Daughter; now if it please you to give me your Daughter in marriage, I will deliver into your hands my Father, and all the Peers of France, that have so much damnified you; for know that in the habit of Pilgrims, they have taken their Journey to visit the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, slenderly accompanied. Quoth Brandiffer, for these Tidings I will give thee my Daughter Galazy, but it must be upon condition, that you renounce your Faith; yes, qu. Haufray, that shall I do. When King Brandiffer saw the Treachery of Haufray, first that he would betray his Father, next forsake his Religion, he withdrew himself to advise with Lucar and the Caliph, saying to them; you see the Treasons of this man that demandeth my Daughter, how dare I trust him that seeketh the Death of his Father, and Ruine of the whole State of France: no, I will not make my peace with such an Homicide, I had rather see my daughters Death, than give her to so vile a Traitor. After these words, he called to Haufray, and said, Sir, I am glad of your coming, & this shall be your task, you shall go to my daughter, and bear this Letter from me, there pass away your time till we have further leasure to resolve on your business. Sir, said Haufray, I am ready to accomplish your demand. So he delivered him the Letter, and a 100 men to conduct him on his way: after they were at Sea, within few daies they came within the sight of the strong Castle where Galazy was; when they were come into the Gate of the Castle, the Porter called unto them, saying, my Lords, you may not enter without some certain token. Porter, said Haufray, tell the Lady that we shall satisfie her: the Porter went unto the Lady, and said, Lady, without the Gate stand a company of men that fain would enter, and as I think they are come from your Father. The Lady had her Gentleman Usher, go know what they would, and of whence they were, who did as she commanded: as soon as she understood he came from her Father K. Brandiffer, she bound up the Lions, and opened the Gate, so Haufray entred, & thought all this had been for his good, but it fell out contrary, for he by treason was intrapped. Being entred the Castle, he was brought before the Lady Galazy, whose Beauty even amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one word. After some time of space, he saluted the Lady, and said unto her; Fair Soveraign, know,

that

that for the great renown that I have heard of your admirable Beauty, I have left my Country, and passed the Seas, to acquaint your Father with that which shall make him happy; and for that you shall find me speak nothing but truth, loe, here is a Letter sent by me from your Father. The Lady taking the Letter, read it, when she had read it, she beheld Haufray, saying; Vassal, I have read thy Letter, and I find thee a Christian, and that thou hast sold the Life of thy Father, and the twelve Peers of France; all this my Father certifieth by his Letter unto me, and commandeth me that I determine what shall be done unto thee. Now for that I understand thee to be a most perfidious Traitor, I swear by the Law I profess, I will neither take pity nor mercy upon such a Wretch as thou art; so she called unto her Officers, and committed him to Prison in a dark Dungeon. Haufray seeing what had hapned, said; It is a bitter Marriage to me, instead of having my Person, you shall be Master of my Prison; and so he was convey'd away forth of her presence. Now in the same Dungeon lay the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight, & when they heard they should have another Fellow prisoner, the Emperor so soon as he came in, demanded of him [illegible] he was? Haufray said, it is no matter of whence, but I am that unhappy Haufray, Bastard son of K. Pepin; why, qd. the Emperor, I am the Emperor of Greece, can you tell me how it feareth with my Brother K. Pepin. and my 2 sons, with the residue of the Peers of France? Sir, said Haufray, they are in this Country of Angory, and have won the same in Battel. So leave we them in Prison, and [illegible] Valentine and Pacolet.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How *Valentine* and *Pacolet* came before the Castle, and how *Pacolet* raised up the Devil, to ask his counsel about the taking of the Castle. And how *Brandiffer* brought the twelve Peers of *France* into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them. And how he besieged the City of *Angory*. And how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was Captive in *Angory*, made means to *Valentine* to deliver him upon sufficient Ransom.

After many days sail, these two arrived at the Castle, and viewing it strangely, thought it impregnable; at last Pacolet said, Sir, anon I will tell you more: so he went aside and cast a Figure, & incontinently

ly there apppeared unto him a Devil, who ſaid unto him: Leave off your Enterpriſe, for the Caſtle is not to be taken but by Treaſon, ſo vaniſhed: Suddenly after his departure, there aroſe a great ſmoak about the Caſtle, inſomuch that Valentine loſt the ſight of Pacolet, and was driven into an Amazement. This Miſt being diſperſed, Pacolet came to Valentine, and ſaid, let us depart, for there's no way to Conquer this Caſtle, but by Treaſon, ſo they forſook the Caſtle and went towards Angory: being there, they demanded Tidings of King Pepin, but it was anſwered, he was gone to Jeruſalem on Pilgrimage; ſo Valentine reſolved to ſtay there till his Uncle returned, but all in vain, for by the Treaſon of Haufray, King Pepin was ſurpriſed by Brandiffer, as you ſhall hear.

King Pepin being come to Jeruſalem, by the direction of certain Guides, they were conducted to the Holy Places. During the time of their abode here in Jeruſalem, came Brandiffer the Indian King, and K. Lucar, having had intelligence by Haufray, as before ye've heard, accompanied with a great Hoaſt of men, and marched ſo far, that they came unto the King of Jury, being come unto him, he did very much

marvel

marvel at their coming, and after Salutations, demanded the Cause. Then spake Brandifer; Sir, know this, that by a Christian we are informed, that lately there is come into this Holy City, certain Pilgrims, the one of them is K. Pepin of France, the rest are the twelve Peers: if it be so, we crave your aid and assistance, for they are unto us mortal enemies, and have taken from me my City of Angory, making great spoils within my Territories; wherefore we desire you that they may be delivered into our hands, that we may proceed against them according to our Law. Your demand is but reasonable (quoth the King of Jury) therefore let all be done according to your wish, for I am an enemy unto all such as shall deride us and our religion. Now hearken a little what I shall undertake, I will send unto the Patriarch about this matter, and if he have any such French Pilgrims, that he presently bring them before you. The King of Jury sent a Messenger unto the Patriarch, to bring them before him: then the Patriarch went unto the Pilgrims, and said, Friends, you must come before the King of Jury. Hereat Pepin grew exceeding sad, for he thought he should lose his life; but yet he ruled a little, and I will tell you what we will do: let us here make Henry our Lord, and I will wait upon him as a Page, bearing his Hat and Staff. Henry being too skilful in Treasons, denied it, saying, here's Orson & D. Myllon more worthier than I, let them take it upon them: qd. Myllon so you please, I shall do any thing; then they took their way towards the Pagan that sent for them. D. Myllon took upon him the person of the King, and the King was his Page, and bare his Hat & Staff. The Patriarch after he had delivered them to the King departed, and the K. of Jury said unto them; It is told me you are all French-men come as Spies, and amongst you is the King of France. Sir, said one of the company, the K. of France is not here: How? not here (qd. the K. of Jury) if he do not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous death. Then spake Hen. the Traitor, and said, it is not I. At these words D. Myllon doubted treason, and said, Sir, I am the K. of France, but withal suffer me to tell you a thing worthy of note, we are all Christians, and it is free for us to go safely, even by your own Laws & Customs of your Country, paying a certain Tribute. Now this Tribute is by us daily paid and observed, wherefore you offer us much wrong, to detain us contrary to your custom. Say what you will (qd. Jury) but to Spies there is no such privileges allowed:

priviledges allowed: and now he called forth Brandiffer & Lucar, & ſaid unto them: Lords, theſe be the Chriſtian Spies, take them, & do with them as pleaſeth you: Theſe words uttered, the Pilgrims were laid hold on, and then Brandiffer ſaid: Lords, let theſe be conveyed to my ſtrongeſt Caſtle, & put them into the deepeſt dungeon: which being done, let us make haſte into Angory & beat out all our enemies; after, into France, to bring that to our ſubjection; all this may be eaſily effected, ſith we have all the Peers thereof in captivity, ſo that there is not a man of worth to make reſiſtance. This done, the Indian K. required that amongſt all thoſe Priſoners, he might have the little one to make his Dwarf of, (which was K. Pepin) his requeſt was likewiſe granted, ſo he took along with him King Pepin, and loved him exceedingly.

The Indian K. taking his leave, every one of the Peers looked pitifully on K. Pepin, but durſt not ſpeak unto him. Pepin being on his way with the Indian, began thus to lament. How unfortunate am I among men? alas D. Myllon, it grieveth me moſt for thee, for thy love towards me hath brought thy ſelf in danger. But for my Son Henry, I lay all my curſe on thee, that refuſed to relieve thy Father in caſe of extremity. Farewel Bertha my wife, and my young ſon Charles, thy caſe is moſt dangerous, for what will not Traitors attempt againſt thee: by this time is the Indian come home into his own Land. When the Lady Roſamond ſaw his approach, ſhe was right glad, & received him with much kindneſs; at laſt ſhe threw her eyes on K. Pepin, who was of ſmall ſtature, & demanded of the King where he had that little man: Lady, ſaid the King, he was given me at Jeruſalem, being come thither with the King of France, and the twelve Peers.

But now let us return to ſpeak ſomewhat of Clerimond, who was in the Court of the Indian King. The Kings manner was to ſend her every meal of the beſt meat from his own Table: & one night at ſupper time, called Pepin unto him, for to carry her Proviſion, ſaying unto him: Go into the Great Chamber on the other ſide of the Court, there ſhalt thou find a ſolitary woman, bear this from me to her; Pepin did as he was commanded, but when he ſaw her in thoſe baſe rags, he ſaid unto her: I pitty your diſtreſſed eſtate: when the Lady heard him ſay ſo, ſhe ſaid: Friend, pitty thy ſelf, let me alone, I am not what I ſeem to be: but tell me, art thou a Chriſtian? Lady, ſaid Pepin, I am, & come from the Realm of France. Then the Lady with a ſmiling countenance, ſaid: know you then K. Pepin & his Nephew Valentine? I (qu. Pepin) & his

brother Orſon, & his Father the Emperor of Greece: The Lady hearing him ſay ſo, began to ſhed tears, and yet ſpake, ſaying: Friend, may I put truſt in you? I, ſaid K. Pepin, even as well as if I were your natural Father. Then thus, know for certainty, that all that I have done, is but counterfeit, for I am a Chriſtian, & the woful love of Valentine, that was given unto him as his Wife, but I was betrayed & ſtolen away by that Traitor K. Trompart: then ſhe unfolded the manner of all theſe things: when K. Pepin heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, & ſaid unto himſelf theſe words; Ha! what truſt is in this world? Alas for this poor Lady, Alas for Valentine; & yet to ſee it is my chance at laſt to find her out in this unlookt for adventure: After he had ended theſe lamentations, he ſaid: Lady, now I underſtand whom you are, & ſith you truſted me with the ſecrets of your heart; give me leave alſo a little to ſhew you whom I am: Here you ſee me, & in what ſhape I go cloathed, yet know that I am Pepin K. of France, and by diſaſterous chance I am fallen in this ſervitude. As for Valentine, know that he undertaketh dangerous adventures, & continueth ſtill without taking any reſt: Now I have knowledge of you, if between us we can make theſe things known to him, with great joy you may imbrace each other. At theſe words the Lady ſwounded, but Pepin ſeeing her recovered, left her, & came unto the King, being at ſupper. So here we reſt to talk any more of this matter, and return to ſay ſomewhat of Brandiffer and Lucar, who are buſied in leading the twelve Peers of France to Priſon.

Brandiffer having the twelve Peers in priſon, and with them Haufray and Henry, the only workers of the Treaſon, came into his Caſtle, where he told all the whole enterprize to his Daughter, how the 12 Peers fell into his hand. Having finiſhed his tale, he put them into a Dungeon, whereas the Emperor, the Green K. and Haufray lay.

Henry was much troubled, that he durſt not diſcover his mind to Brandiffer, for he was the firſt that was let into the Dungeon, after him Myllon Daugler, who by chance fell upon Haufray, which made him angry: Be not angry (quoth Myllon) for there are many more to come down after me, to whom you muſt give place. Haufray knew after, that it was D. Myllon, and demanded of him, by what means he came thither? Nay (qd. Myllon) I rather wonder how you came hither? for I am ſure we left you within the City of Angory. Quoth the Traitor, I was taken for a Spy, & for that cauſe am I hither brought:

Now

Now are all theſe Lords ſorrowing in Priſon, but when Haufray underſtood that K. Pepin was not among them, he ſeemed outwardly exceeding glad, though in heart he could wiſh his death. Every one looked for nothing but death, ſave only Orſon, and he bare it out comfortably, ſaying: Lords, let us yet truſt to my Brother Valentine and Pacolet, who by enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Caſtle was impregnable. Brandiffer having thus made all ſure, called before him his daughter Galazy, & ſaid unto her: I muſt depart to ſatisfie mine Army; being there, I ſhall meet with the Indian King and Lucar, both which will aid me againſt the French, that holdeth the City of Angory, therefore keep well my Priſoners, ſo he departed. And when he came unto his Army, he found Lucar ready, but as for the Indian King, he ſent his Forces, and came not himſelf, by reaſon that Rozamond was lately dead.

The two Kings gathered up their Forces, and took their way towards Angory, whither being come, Valentine had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for K. Pepin. This much amazed the noble Valentine, when he ſaw the Tents ſo nigh him: at laſt he call'd Pacolet unto him, ſaying: I wonder I hear not of my Uncle Pepin. Fear not (ſaid Pacolet) for e're long we will hear better news: and therewithal departed from Angory, & never reſted till he came unto the Camp of K. Lucar, who eſpying him, demanded of him what news, & what was become of his Maſter, who ſo long time he had ſerved? Pacolet anſwered: Sir, he is long ſince dead, & I am come to ſeek a new Maſter. (Qd. Lucar) Wilt thou ſerve me? Yes (qd. Pacolet.) Thus was he received into his ſervice, but he ill rewarded his new Maſter, for that ſame night by enchantment he caſt Lucar into ſuch a ſleep, that he carried him into the City of Angory. Valentine was right glad of this, & Lucar being placed before a fire, the Enchantment ceaſed, & he awaked. Being awaked, he became ſore aſtonied to ſee himſelf thus betrayed, & at laſt Pacolet ſaid unto him: Maſter, I am at your ſervice, have you any thing to command me? At the which words Lucar grew much enraged, and taking a knife, gave Pacolet ſuch a wound that he fell down dead. Valentine ſeeing this accident, was exceeding ſorrowful, & ſaid: Such another Friend ſhall I never have, falſe traitor (quoth he) thou haſt ſlain him that was all my hope, if thou haſt thou ſhalt ſurely pay for it: Then ſaid Lucar, I am glad that traitor is ſlain.

Now Valentine went towards the dead corps, & took out of his boſome a pair of writing-Tables, in which was written the whole man-

ner of his Art. Theſe Tables had Pacolet ever made Valentine acquainted withal, wiſhing him that if he outliued him, he ſhould make great account of them: ſo Valentine put them up, & after made uſe of them: here would Valentine haue K. Lucar put to death, but being better aduiſed, he was ſafely kept in Priſon, if ſo be that any worthy perſonage ſhould be taken by the Pagans, then the body of Lucar ſhould ſerue for ranſome of the other. Thus Valentine cauſed the body of Pacolet to be honourably interred, whoſe death was bewailed of all.

The next morning there aroſe an outcry throughout the army, that Lucar was gone, no man knew how: amongſt the reſt, Brandiffer made great lamentation, till one told him that he was in Angory, & how he had ſlain Pacolet, Brandiffer was glad Pacolet was ſlain, but ſorry for Lucar: at laſt calling to him a Meſſenger, he ſent to Valentine, to aſk him if he would deliuer Lucar for K. Pepin, or the Emperor, or Orſon, or any other of the twelue Peers of France; the meſſenger departed on his way with theſe conditions; & coming to the City of Angory, deſired to ſpeak with Valentine: After ſalutations on both parts, he declared his meſſage from King Brandiffer. Valentine hearing the effect of his meſſage, was much amazed, & ſaid to the Meſſenger; How commeth it to paſs, that Brandiffer can make choice of all theſe valiant men? how became they his Priſoners? Sir, the Meſſenger, I think it is not unknown, how that K. Pepin accompanied with the 12 Peers of France, not long ſince went to Jeruſalem, & having amongſt them one traitor, was deliuered into the hands of Brandiffer, & by him taken in Jeruſalem, & committed to priſon; wherefore having thus related unto you the truth, ſaid: will you change one priſoner for another? Meſſenger, I ſhall giue anſwer to thee anon: ſo entring into the Hall, he aſſembled unto him all his counſel, ſaying to them: Thus it is, that for our Priſoner Lucar, we may haue deliuered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle King Pepin: now in this cauſe let us reſolue what is to be done. The Lords replyed, you are moſt bound to your natural Father, and therefore we iudge it moſt meet to releaſe him. Lords, (qd. Valentine) you haue well aduiſed, but yet I am determined to do otherwiſe, for you all know that my Mother was wrongfully baniſhed, and in her exile brought me forth, & my Father in the Forreſt of Orleance, where we might both haue been deuoured of beaſts if my Uncle K. Pepin had not taken me up. Thus he nouriſhed and brought me up unto mans eſtate: after he made me Kt. and hath beſtowed upon me many preferments &.

ments: therefore I ſay, theſe things conſidered, my will is, that my Uncle be ſet free for K. Lucar; he being thus at liberty, we will quickly work the freedom of my Father and all the reſt. When the Barons had heard the wiſdom of Valentine, they agreed all with one voice, that he had nobly ſpoken. Then called they unto them the Meſſenger of Brandiffer, and ſaid; Friend, return this Anſwer to thy Maſter, tell him, that we ſhall willingly yield the body of K. Lucar, upon condition that he deliver unto us the body of K. Pepin: ſo after due reverence done, the Meſſenger departed; being returned home, he delivered his Meſſage as Valentine had delivered it to him, whereupon Brandiffer ſwore by the Gods, he ſhould have his Requeſt.

CHAP. XLIX.

How *Myllon Daugler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of Priſon in lieu of King *Lucar*: and how *Valentine* and the Duke of *Myllon* iſſued out of the City of *Angory*, and won the Battel from the Sarazens: and how King *Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *Indies* Marſhal, and left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to ſuccour his Wife.

BRandiffer underſtanding Valentines mind, he ſuddenly diſpatched other Meſſengers to his Daughter Galazy, which kept the ſtrong Caſtle, willing her to deliver unto theſe Meſſengers the K. of France, and let all the reſt alone. The Maiden hearing her Fathers mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Jailor of the Priſon, and commanded him to call forth the K. of France: the Jailor went unto the Priſon, calling for the K. of France, for I am commanded to ſet him at liberty. D. Myllon hearing him ſay ſo, could not ſo ſatisfie himſelf, but in doubting manner ſaid, I am here, wherefore do you call me forth? if it be ſo, that I am the firſt muſt ſuffer death, I am ready to lay it down to maintain my Religion. Sir (qd. the Jailor) it is no ſuch matter, for you are to be delivered body for body, to ranſom another Pagan K. which reſteth in captivity among the Chriſtians: when Henry heard theſe words, he repented him that he had denied to take upon him the Perſon of the K. Thus D. Myllon took his leave with tears; the Emperor of Greece ſaid unto him, above all, I pray remember me to my Son Valentine, and me to (qd. Orſon) and tell him in what miſery we lie, requeſting him either quickly to work our delivery, or we are not able to endure our lives. Myllon comforted them all he might, and

ſaid

said unto them, Lords, I will not return into France, till I see you at liberty, and so he took his way. Being out of Prison, he went to the Lady Galazy, and did unto her reverence, which she kindly accepted, and commended him to his Fortunes: So the Duke went along with the Messengers that were sent for the King of France. When they were come before Brandiffer, he said unto him; King, I would have you know wherefore I sent for you, and to that end I have appointed those Messengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of Angory to Valentine, and in your stead, to send me back my Son Lucar, as he hath promised. Sir (quoth the Duke) all this shall be effected to your wish; and if he will not deliver K. Lucar according to your expectation, I shall willingly come again, and yield to your mercy. Royally spoke (quoth Brandiffer) I ask no more. So the Duke took leave, and departed with the Messengers towards Angory. After few dales they arrived where they had free access to the Palace where Valentine lay; being in sight of one another, they kindly embraced. After D. Myllon took Valentine aside, and related unto him the whole course of his Actions, and how K. Pepin was led away by the Indian King, who knew not who he was, and how he had taken upon him the Kings Name, only to shield him from danger. When Valentine heard this, he thanked him for his deed, and began to recount what a Benefit had happed to him, that he was delivered, and the rest left in Bonds; for by your true loialty to your Soveraign, you are escaped from danger. Valentine having ended this Discourse, he caused King Lucar to be brought before him, to whom he thus said; King Lucar, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my hands, I shall remember you for the death of my Friend Pacolet, whom you have slain. These words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers: now was Lucar delivered, and the D. Myllon restored in his room: Valentine having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers, the Dukes company, they gathered all their scattered Troops up into Battel-aray, and with the number of 50000 fighting men, they issued out of the City upon the Enemy. Brandiffer hearing hereof, made up against him, accompanied with Twenty four Kings his Attendants, all holding him their chief Lord; but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

Then Valentine resolved to give a new On-set upon the Pagans,

and

and courageously heartning his men, he ſet upon that part wherein was Brandiffer and K. Lucar. In the thickeſt of this Battel, an Admiral (who was Lord of Maſſidon) eſpying a French-man making havock with his ſword among the Pagans, he made towards him, and hitting him with his Ax, he clave his head in two pieces: having newly done this deed, he was eſpyed by another French Cavalier, who making towards this Admiral in the preſence of Myllon Daugler, he ſmote him ſtark dead: for the which act of Valour Myllon Knighted him, and ſaid among them all; That he that won Valour ſhould receive the like reward. In this manner continued the Battel all that day, even till the Sun-ſet. At laſt they ſtrove on each part which ſhould ſound Retreat firſt, but neither ſide would yield, ſo that the Fight continued all that Night, till the next Morning, making great Fires to give them light. At break of Day the Battel began afreſh, in moſt fierce manner, that Blood ran down as Water in Channels.

Valentine and D. Myllon behaved themſelves right valiantly, on every ſide they beat down both Horſe and Man. But Valentine was too forward, for he entred ſo far into the Enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of Brandiffer. Being there, the Indian Admiral eſpyed him, who ran ſo fiercely at him, that he ſlew Valentines horſe under him, who perceiving himſelf unhors'd, lightly got upon his feet, and with his Sword hewed out a paſſage, but he could not have eſcaped, had not D. Myllon by chance reliev'd him with a freſh horſe. So Valentine retired himſelf out of the Battel to refreſh his tired Limbs. When the Indian Marſhal ſaw their ſide had the worſt, he by his Policy withdrew his Forces, and in the Night-time ſtole out of ſight, ſo that at laſt they betook them to their heels and ran away.

Valentine perceiving it, told D. Myllon thereof, ſo they determined that Valentine and his Troops ſhould ſet upon the Marſhal, which they did, and fell upon the Indians in ſuch furious manner, that they upon their firſt adventure brake their Battel-array. The Marſhal ſeeing it, thought to have fled, but Valentine meeting him at this advantage, lent him ſuch a wrap with his Spear, as both Horſe and Man fell to the earth. Being on the ground, the Souldiers would have killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the cuſtody of four valiant Knights.

In this bickering there were many Priſoners of account ſurpriſed and taken, all which Valentine ſent into Angory, to be kept in ſafety.

By

By this time of the day, Brandiffer and Lucar knew that they had the worſe, but they could not make reſiſtance. At laſt, they reſolved to return again into their own Countries, and renew their forces afreſh. So wrapping up their Enſigns, they took their flight towards the Sea-coaſt, & the Chriſtians followed after, killing all that withſtood them: of all the Pagans multitudes that went into the field, there eſcaped but 100 perſons: they being gone, the Chriſtians rifling their tents, found inestimable treaſure, and having ſo done, they return'd to Angory, to reſt their tired limbs. After the Chriſtians had won the battel, & given burial to the dead, Valentine commanded the Priſoners to be brought before him. Amongſt the reſt was the Marſhal of India, of whom he demanded if he would forſake his Mahometry: The Marſhal anſwered that he would ſooner forſake his life: then D. Myllon demanded of what Country he was, he ſaid: I am a Marſhal of Inde, & one whom the K. loveth. Quoth D. Myllon to Valentine, we are made happy in this priſoner, for in exchange of him we ſhall releaſe K. Pepin, who was led away by the Indian K. to be his Dwarf, when we were taken priſoners at Jeruſalem: then they demanded of him if the K. had not in his poſſeſſion a Chriſtian of low ſtature: yes (qd. he) there remaineth ſuch a one in his Court, but not as his priſoner, and thither was he brought, when the twelve Peers of France were taken in Jeruſalem. Marſhal (quoth Valentine) it is he after whom we enquire, wherefore let him be brought hither & delivered to us, & you ſhall be ſet at liberty; for he is a Page whom I ever loved, attended upon my perſon. At theſe words the Marſhal reſoyced, & ſent Letters to the Indian K. The Meſſenger being diſpatcht he brought Letters to the Indian K. & when he had read them he was willing to change, for he knew not that it was K. Pepin, & calling him before him, he then ſaid: Friend, we give you free liberty to depart my country, for my Marſhal being taken among the Chriſtians, ſhall be ſurrendred in your ſtead. K. Pepin thanked him, & having taken his leave of the K. he ran unto the Lady Clerimond, & ſaid: Lady, take good heart, for I am ſet at liberty; and I will ſend Valentine unto you, who will ſoon work your releaſe. The Lady hearing this, was very joyful, and Pepin departed with the Meſſenger towards Angory. After ſome few dayes they arrived there, where the French-men ſpared for no coſt, to ſhew their love to K. Pepin, & at laſt Valentine came, and ſaid: Uncle, we had good hap in taking the Marſhal, for we have by that means procured your liberty. Nephew (ſaid

King

K. Pepin) you above all men have moſt cauſe to reioyce, for I bring you the happieſt news that ever you heard, and this it is: Fair Clerimond, whom you ſo long have loſt, is now found, and by me ſendeth you hearty commendations: then he related her miſfortunes, and how ſhe had demeaned her ſelf, to ſhun the love of the Indian K. Valentine hearing this ioyful tydings, he uttered theſe words: Dear Lady, thou haſt bought my love at too dear a rate, and curſed I, if I prove falſe, & for tryal hereof, I will either purchaſe thy freedom, or loſe mine own Life. This ſpeech, and other affairs being ended, the Marſhal was delivered. Then Valentine betook him to his Chamber to try the Tables that he took out of Pacolets boſome when he was ſlain, and found every thing ſet down, to fall out juſt as it was now come to paſs, & taking unto him pen, ink and paper, he wrote down what there he found, and ſowing it unto his Doublet (for fear of loſing) it ſtood him in great ſtead after, for the ſafeguard of his life, as hereafter will appear.

K. Pepin being reſident in Angory, news was brought him from his Wife Bertha, that all France was doubtful of his Life, and of the twelve Peers of France; becauſe they heard they were taken priſoners by the Pagans at Jeruſalem. This report running for current throughout France, hath cauſed Arthur K. of Brittain, with a puiſſant hoſt to enter the Kingdom, and to win the Crown of France by violence. Alſo the ſaid Arthur hath committed to exile your young ſon Charles. When K. Pepin had heard theſe tydings, he grew wonderfully deſperate, & preſently called together all his Barrons, & ſat in Counſel what was requiſite to be done in ſuch a deſperate plot. At laſt it was reſolved, that King Pepin in perſon ſhould depart into his own Land, to ſuppreſs the Uſurper, which he accordingly did, and coming unto Valentine, he began to ſpeak unto the King. Fair Uncle, it were moſt requiſite that I tarry here to gather new forces, to reſcue my father, and the 12 Peers of France. Do ſo (qd. K. Pepin) & if it ſo fall out, that I overcome, I will furniſh you with freſh ſupplies againſt the Pagans, that you may with more eaſe compaſs what you intend to do.

CHAP. L.

How *Valentine* under the ſhape of a Phyſitian, went into *India* to ſee & ſpeak with the fair *Clerimond*: And how *Valentine* rode away with her. And how the *K.* of *Brittain* was given to K. *Pepin* by treaſon. And how *Valentine* took the ſtrong Caſtle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, & all the reſt of the Priſoners:

And how the Emperor, *Orſon*, and the Green Kt. kept a ſtrong Garriſon in his Caſtle, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* compaſſed the Death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orſon* and the Green Kt. left the Caſtle, and came to the ſuccour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the Chriſtians iſſued out of the City of *Angory*, and bid battel to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly ſlew his own Father, and how *Myllon Dangler* returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orſon* into *Greece*.

YOu have heard already, that K. Pepin brought news unto Valentine of the Lady Clerimond, which having heard, it would not out of his mind; at laſt he reſolved to paſs from Angory to India, accompanied with one Squire, & in the ſhape of a Phyſitian, he went to Sea with the Indian Merchants; being arrived, he lay in the City at an Inn-holders houſe, till his Gown and other Habiliments were in a readineſs. At his firſt entrance in this Inn, the Hoſt asked him what he was? he ſaid, a Phyſitian, and can cure any manner of diſeaſe. The Hoſt believed him, and his Squire ſerved him as his Apothecary or Clerk. In this manner, lying thereabout ſome 3 days, he called his Hoſt to him, & deſired him to get a man to go about the City, to make known his art, and ſee who needed help, that I may cure them, for I would fain get ſomething to defray my charge while I lye in your houſe; but in the mean ſpace, rather than you ſhall miſtruſt me, I will leave you a good pawn: Marry (ſaid the Hoſt) with all my heart, I accept of your gage: So Valentine delivered him a rich mantle, furred quite through with coſtly Furrs, & bad him bring before him that party, that ſhould make known his art. The Hoſt went out, and brought him a ragged fellow who had not any thing to hang upon him: Valentine yet was glad of ſuch a Fellow as this, and new cloathed him from head to foot, and ſaid unto him; My friend, go thy ways into the City, & cry about the ſame, that there is come a Phyſitian, that can heal all diſeaſes, even Mad-men or Women, he will undertake to cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded, and paſſed from place to place, to publiſh this Doctors skill. At laſt theſe tydings came to the King, becauſe he had given out, that he could recover mad folks to their former ſences. So the King bearing good will to the Lady Clerimond, ſent for this Phyſitian; who although he had before him many Cripples, Blind, Lame, and Crooked, at his Lodging, & he left them

them all, and came unto the King, for there lay the mark at which he aimed. Being come before the King, he did his obeyſance in the name of the great God Jupiter: and the King ſaid unto him; Sir, you be welcome to my Court, firſt Dine, and then I ſhall tell you further the cauſe of my ſending for you. The King being ſet and ſerved, made Valentine alſo to be richly attended, and dinner being done, ſaid unto him; Sir, I have a beautious Lady in this Pallace, whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly, but ſhe will by no means conſent, until the ſeerm of one year was expir'd: I granted her to forbear that year, as ſhe demanded, but at the end ſhe was poſſeſſed with a Lunacy, inſomuch that none durſt come within her reach; ſometimes ſhe whiſtles, anon ſhe cryeth out in a pitiful manner, another while ſhe laugheth, and then ſhe falleth into a flood of tears, ſo that my heart is over-charged with ſorrow for her: Now if your skill extend it ſelf to cure her, I will give you more wealth than you can ask, for my wife Rozamond being dead, I would make her Queen of India. My Lord, (quoth Valentine) fear not but ſhe ſhall do well, but ſhe is the harder to be cured, in that it hath ſeized her ſo long. Again, I muſt be with her all night, to mark the manner of her fits. You ſhall (qd. the King) have one appointed to bring you thither, but look to your ſelf, leſt ſhe harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided Valentine to her window: now go thy way, and leave me alone. When Valentine beheld her in this deſperate caſe, he ſaid: Alas my Love, you have bought me dear, as I have you; but by the Gods I ſwear, I ſhall never return again to France, till I have you along with me, or here loſe my Life. The Lady beheld him fearfully, and whatſoever came firſt to hand, ſhe threw at him, which much amazed Valentine: Then ſaid Valentine, is this true madneſs, or but feigned? Dear love (qd. he) tell me the truth, I am Valentine your love, for whom I have ſuffered all this damage, think on the Brazen-head that you gave me, or of my brother Orſon that had the ſtring cut in his mouth, or how you were ſtolen away by the Enchanter Adrimain. When the Lady heard this, ſhe fell into a ſwound for joy; and being again recovered, ſhe ſaid: Alas my Love, how many dangers have we paſſed through; you for me, and I for you? And now behold in what baſeneſs I have carried my ſelf for thee. Lady, Love dearly bought is the ſweeteſt: By this time the Trumpets ſounded to bring in the King's meat for Supper, ſo

that he ſaid unto the Lady: My love, I will go into the Palace, but after ſupper I will come again, for the King knoweth not but I am a Phyſitian, & hath ſent for me to heal your: the Lady bad him go. Being come into the Palace, as ſoon as the King ſaw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady? Yes (quoth Valentine) to morrow you ſhall hear her ſpeak as diſcreetly as ever ſhe did. The King was ſo joyful thereat, that he gave unto him a rich Mantle, all beſet with precious ſtones, and cauſed him to ſit down at his own Table. After ſupper, Valentine ſaid unto the King, it is neceſſary I have a fire all this night in the Chamber where my patient is, for ſhe will be extream ſick all this night. Well, quoth the King, let all things be done, ſpare for no coſt. Now Valentine taketh his way towards the Chamber of fair Clerimond, with one who carryed wood to make his fire withal; which being done he willed every one to depart, ſave only his ſquire, then Valentine ſhut all the Doors and Windows, and ſaid unto Clerimond: Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleaſure, and caſting his eye aſide, he eſpied the Horſe of wood, and asked her whoſe it was, who anſwered, Pacolet's: then ſaid Valentine, let us hence immediately, whereunto ſhe conſented.

Valentine being ſomewhat acquainted with Pacolet's horſe, mounted him, with Clerimond and his Squire, in a Moon-ſhine night, & with great expedition haſted unto the City of Angory, being come thither, Valentine cauſed the Gates thereof to be opened, & there was great joy for the Lady Clerimond. The next morning Valentine cauſed her to be clad in rich habiliments, & married her. By this time the K. knew of her eſcape, and grew frenzy, and ſaid: Ha, thou falſe enchanter, haſt thou thus deceived me? If thou fall once again into my hands, I will quickly bereave thee of thy life: and ſo he cauſed purſuit to be made after Valentine, but all in vain, for they found him not. Here leave we them. Now I proceed to tell you of K. Pepin, how he haſted into France to the ſuccour of Bertha his wife, and to chaſtiſe the Uſurper. The King of Brittain not thinking what would happen, ſtrengthened himſelf with all the Forces he could make, and ſent out Proclamation that all that could bear arms ſhould aſſiſt him into France. Hereupon Queen Bertha, with her young Son Charles, fled to Lyons to ſeek ſuccour: At the ſame time lived a worthy and truſty Earl of Anjoy, who favouring the Queen, and pitying her diſtreſs, fortified his Caſtle againſt the Brittains, to whom the Queen

ſent

ſent 4000 Horſe to keep the paſſage. At laſt the King of Brittain bid the Earl give him paſſage into France, but he anſwered, No: Hereupon there was appointed a band of Souldiers, to lay ſiege at Angiers, but the Earl kept cloſe within the City, and would not iſſue out thereof. During the ſiege was K. Pepin come to Paris, and there was ioyfully received: when the Queen underſtood he was at Paris, ſhe haſted unto him, and when ſhe came before him, in tears, ſhe ſaid: Dear Lord, revenge us on this Murther. Lady (quoth the King) fear it not. So calling about him his Counſellours, and men of war, he made haſte to furniſh up his companies, and many there were that voluntarily offered themſelves to do the K. any ſervice. By this time the King of Brittain heard that K. Pepin was come againſt him with a great army, which feared him, and not without cauſe. But ſee what followed, for his own friends betrayed him to K. Pepin, only to ſave their own eſtates, and make their peace the better with the King. So reſolving hereupon, on a night they came to him, lying on his bed, and led him perforce before K. Pepin, who preſently cauſed his head to be ſmitten off, within the city of Paris. Now they thought that betrayed him, all was well, but the K. afterwards ſeized all their lands into his hands.

Now

Now was Valentine much troubled in mind, how he should free the Emperor his Father from imprisonment, for he knew well, that the Castle was not to be won by War, or Policy, nor by any thing, but by Treason; At last he resolved on a subtile Plot, and thus it was: He put to Sea 12 Ships, manned with 2000 men, and laden with all manner of Riches, as precious Stones, and Silks, and thus, as Merchants, arrived they at this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the shape of a Merchant, setting a Rich Crown on his head; and said unto his men: Be you all privately armed within the ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Sarazens come aboard, put them to Death. Then coming toward the Castle-gate, with the Crown on his head, the Porter said: what bring you hither friend, said Valentine, I am a Merchant, going into Spain; & having many rich commodities, I hear say, that I might not pass without a tribute, on pain of Death; Said the Porter, I will go to my Lady, and bring you an answer: so he went to Galazy, & told his message: the Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels aboard, she said unto her Seneshal: Go & receive the tribute due to me of the Merchant, & take along with you a sufficient company of Souldiers, lest they should offer you injury. He did as he was commanded, and coming to the ships, they found inestimable Gems; insomuch that they were ravish'd therewith: so they taking the value of the tribute due to the Lady, suddenly the Christians, that lay hid in the Ship, set upon them, and slew them. Then Valentine said unto them: except we go forward in this enterprize, we shall never gain the Castle: wherefore he caused 50 of his men to put on their Sarazens Gowns over their armors, and so lading themselves with silks, and precious stones, took their way to the Castle.

The Porter tyed up the Lyons, let down the draw-bridge, & thirsting after some great reward, went beyond his bounds, insomuch as Valentine led him to the ships: being come, Valentine shewed him their dead bodies, and said: I will make you like one of these, if you give me not passage into this Castle: Sir (qd. the Porter) I shall do it: why then (qd. Valentine) I will reward thee: come, said the Porter, & bring all those men whom you have clad in the habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, & let them enter one by one, which they did: so being entred, the Porter shewed them a secret Postern, which Valentine having gotten, caused all the Doors to be set open, then winded he his Horn, at which all those in the

Ship

Ship hasted unto them. Then he entred the Chamber of the Lady Galazy, who was astonied thereat; but he said: Lady, fear not, for I have ventured the Seas, to have a sight of your Royal presence: then she bad him welcome, and highly feasted him. Valentines men having entred the Castle, with their shouts so affrighted the Lady, that in weeping manner she said unto him: Courteous Knight save my virginity. Lady (qd. he) fear not, for there is none that dares attempt any dishonour towards your person. By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, and Valentine hasting unto the Dungeon, did break it open, & cryed out aloud: All you that be alive come forth. Orſon knowing his voice, replyed: Brother, you are welcome, how came you hither? Valentine said, I am come to set you at liberty. At these words the Emperor fell into a swound; but Orſon suddenly recovered him: then they came out of the Dungeon in ragged cloaths, and ill-coloured faces; but the Christians revelled for the space of seven days in the Castle, and Orſon falling in love with Galazy, after the death of Fezon, married her, by whom he had a Son (named Orſayr) who after had the Empire of Constantinople.

These affairs being thus brought to an end, a Counsil was called what was best to be done: At last they resolved to leave a Garrison to resist the Enemy: Some said it was fitting that Haufray and Henry should undertake this task: but Haufray replyed: Not we, for we are determined to go into France, to serve our Father. Quoth Orſon, if you be so resolved, we have small reason to weep for your departure, for there is nothing but treason in you. At these Words Haufray and Henry ware displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was resolved that the Emperor should take his rest, and his Son Orſon, and the Green Knight should remain there to defend the Castle, whilst Valentine and the rest addressed themselves for Angory. Now will we look into the treason of Haufray and Henry, who being come into France, laid a plot to take away the life of their Father, little Charles his Son, and Bertha the Queen. Being come to Paris, the King royally feasted them, and after demanded what news of the Emperor, Valentine, Orſon, and the rest? (quoth the Traytors) they were all slain in a battle at Angory, at which the King ware wonderful sad. After this they poysoned the King and Queen. Now little Charles was still living, who (as the Gods would have it) hapned under the safe keeping of Mylon Daugler.

The

The King and Quæn being both treacherouſly poyſoned, the two Traytors ſeemed to be exceeding ſorrowful, but D. Myllon Daugler, being a man of a valiant & courageous ſpirit, forthwith cauſed a counſel to be holden, wherein he would have Crowned young Charles King of France, but Haufray & Henry by bribes ſo corrupted the Lords, that Charles was held too young. Hereupon D. Myllon was committed to priſon for ſtanding on the Childs part, & Charles held as a kitchin-boy.

A little after it happened that Haufray commanded Charles to turn a ſpit, but the boy being full of Waſtly, took up the ſpit, & kelled him to the Earth. At this, out ſteps Henry, thinking to ſmite the Child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him ſuch a box on the Ear, that the blood iſſued out of his mouth. Then Haufray commanded his men to lay hold upon him, but there came a Knight which took Charles by the hand, and conveyed him to Paris. The traytors perceiving Charles was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. Hereupon D. Myllon told his Wife thereof, who was Siſter to Charles. The Lady could not behold the ſame for tears, but vowed that they ſhould dearly pay for theſe treaſons; and forthwith cauſed letters to be written into Angory unto Valentine, and the 12 Peers of France. Theſe Letters came firſt into the hands of Valentine, who could not chuſe but weep at this act of villany. The Lords perceiving his tears, asked the cauſe: he anſwered K. Pepin and the Quæn are dead, and as for Charles, the two accurſed brothers, Haufray & Henry, have chaſed him out of the Country, impriſoned D. Myllon, and all that held on young Charles his ſide: theſe are the contents of theſe Letters, and the Lady that ſendeth them, requireth help to apprehend theſe Rebels. Theſe ſad tydings put them to their wits end, & lying between two extreams, knew not which way to take, for Brandiffer was dayly expected with an Army of many thouſands. At laſt Valentine ſaid E're to morrow night I will ſet free D. Myllon, or elſe my ſkill ſhall deceive me: at which they laughed heartily. Valentine departed, and with Pacolet, by night he ſuddenly arrived at Paris, where by his Art he opened the Gates, and releaſed all the priſoners, and being ſhewed the Chamber where D. Myllon was, he entred the ſame, who being faſt aſleep, he awaked him, & ſaid: Sir, I am Valentine, which am come to ſet you free. Then he mounted him on his Horſe, and bad him not ſpeak, for he was to paſs through the Ayr. The Duke prayed him to paſs by the Caſtle of Angier, that he might but ſee his

wife,

wife, which he did, & being come to the Lady thereof, who preſently ran & killed him, demanding of him whether he went? Lady (qd. he) I go to fight againſt the Infidels, to bring home the 12 Peers of France, with an Army to overthrow Haufray & Henry, & to ſuccour Charles. Having refreſhed themſelves with meat, they let forth towards Hungary: being come, they came before all the Barrons, who were much aſtonied at Valentine's art, greatly deſiring to learn it, but he would teach it no man: Now was Brandiffer with his Hoſt come within a mile of Angory, & there planted his ſiege. The Citizens hearing hereof, ſhut up their gates, drew up their bridges, & after got on the walls, lying a month together without making any reſiſtance. The Emperor hearing that Brandiffer had begirt Angory with ſo huge an Army, reſolved to leave the ſtrong Caſtle to the Guard of a Knight. So the Emperor, Orſon, & the Green Kt. took ſhipping, attompanied with 1000 Souldiers: being at Sea, they ſaw a great fleet of Ships coming to them, & at laſt they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men, going to the ſuccour of Brandiffer. The Chriſtians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, ſo that there chanced a bloody battel: great valour was ſhown on both ſides, but they knew not whether the victory would incline. At laſt the Pagan Admiral encountring a Chriſtian Kt. tumbled him over Ship-board: Orſon ſtanding by him, grew angry: & taking his Ax, ſtruck him ſtark dead. This deed diſcouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themſelves all that night, they having loſt 15 tall Ships, and 400 men. Then the Emperor ſaid: Lords, let us Arm our ſelves with ſuch Weapons as here we have ſeized from the Pagans, which they preſently did, but this enterprize was fatal, for the Emperor was ſlain by his own Son Valentine, who took him for an Infidel, as hereafter you ſhall hear. But here they hoiſe ſail again, and at laſt arrived in Angory.

After a Months ſiege, Valentine ſent a defiance to Brandiffer, offering him battel. The Chriſtians divided their battel into ten Squadrons, whereof D. Myllon was their General. The ſecond, Sampſon of Orleance. The third, Earl of Vandſom. The fourth, Earl of Campagne. The fifth, Quintine of Norm. The ſixth, the D. of Burgoyn. The ſeventh, the Earl of Dampmartin. The eighth, the Earl of Aſſerve. The ninth, the Marſhal of Conſtantinople. The tenth, was Valentine, who added courage to all the reſt. Being in order, they iſſued out of the City, to aſſail Brandiffer, who had divided his Army into 15 Squadrons, & that Squadron which had the leaſt Commander, was a Kt.

At the joyning of theſe battels, a certain Pagan (that never before had bæn in wars) couched his Spear in his reſt, and would be the foremoſt man, but Valentine thinking to cool his Pride, ran againſt him, & ſtruck him down dead. Then they fell to it pell mell, wherein the Chriſtians behaved themſelves valiantly & the Indian K. entring the Battel, made very much ſlaughter: but Valentine mæting him, gave him ſuch a counter-buff, that he ſet him beſides his Horſe.

At this preſent the Chriſtians got the better, & cauſed the Infidels to give ground, but there came in a Sarazens Captain, with 3000 men, and continued the battel more hotter then before. By this time K. Lucar lighted on the Indian K. & lent him ſucour: now the Chriſtians began to retire, inſomuch that they had bæn forced to a ſhameful flight, had not two valiant Kts. arrived in Angory, with 700 men at arms (the which lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, & ſuffered much miſery) entred the field. The one of them brought into France, the daughter of a rich admiral, called Claradine, & cauſed her to be baptized: the name of the one, was Reynord of Province, the other, Myllon of Dyon. At their approach the Pagans were much diſcomfited, for Myllon of Dyon, at his firſt encounter, ſmote K. Lucar ſtark dead, & at the next, another K. called Rubres; which accident much amazed Brandiffer. At another part of the battel ruſhed in Reynord, & ſlew many of them. Valentine wondred at theſe two Kts. of Chivalry, & coming towards them, ſaid, Lords, you are Welcome, I pray you what are you, or by what chance come you hither? Friend (qd. Reynord) we are Lords of France, & lately come from the holy Sepulchre, who hearing of theſe wars, we thought it requiſite to defend you againſt the Pagans. I am called Reynord, Lord of Province, & my companion is called Myllon of Dyon. Mirth Valentine, Once again heartily welcome, for Myllon Daugler is here, & all the Pærs of France: ſo they joyntly ruſhed afreſh into the Battel. All this while the Indian K. had a ſpleen at Valentine, for his laſt diſgrace, and finding him out, accompanied only with 3 other Kings, they ſo encountred Valentine, that they did ſmite him and his horſe to the ground: being down, he quickly recovered, & drawing out his Sword, defended himſelf therewith, but with much danger. At laſt D. Myllon, Sampſon, & Garvis, came unto his ſuccour, getting a freſh horſe for him. Valentine being mounted, made his courſe againſt the Indian K. again, & ſtriking him down, took from him his ſhield, which he kept, (for he had loſt his own.) This ended, tydings came, that a great fleet of Sarazens

was

was coming near unto the Haven. Hereupon Valentine ſaid, Lords, let us preſently go ſtrengthen the paſſages. So Valentine, & the D. Mylon of Dyon went to the haven, but theſe were all friends and Chriſtians, amongſt whom, was his Father the Emperor of Greece, of whom you ſhall hear more at large.

The Emperor having landed his men, Valentine ſaluted him with his ſpear in his reſt: the Emperor (who bare the ſhield of a Sarazen unknown) encountred with his ſon. At laſt Valentine ran his ſpear quite through his fathers body, ſo that he fell down dead. His father being dead, he ſaid, montioy vive *Greece*. Orſon ſeeing his father dead, did weep, & ſaid unto Valentine: Brother, there is ſmall conqueſt in this, for you have ſlain your father. When he heard him ſay ſo, he fell in an extaſie from his horſe. To this lamentation of the two Brothers, came Reynord of Province, & Mylon of Dyon to comfort them, ſaying, Knights, have patience, for tears cannot recal him; Alas, ſaid Valentine, what have I done? it were happy for me, if death would take me from this world, I have committed this fact, deteſtable both to God & men: O what will become of me? my life have I paſſed away in troubles, torments, & cares, and now to add more ſorrow to my days, I have ſhed the blood of my dear father. Brother Orſon, take my ſword & cut off my head, that the earth may not bear ſo bloody a butcher. Brother, ſaid Orſon, depart not thus, but repent, & no doubt but you ſhall be forgiven. So comforting him in this manner, at laſt they got him to his horſe, whereon being mounted, he ran through out the Pagan Troops ſo furiouſly, that all they that ſtood in his way periſhed. Now began the battel to encreaſe, & K. Chriſtopher ſlew the Chriſtians on every ſide. At laſt Valentine meeting him, gave him ſuch a Canvaſada, that he pierced his body quite through. In this battel the D. Myllon of Dyon, & Reynord of Province, ruſhed ſo fierce into the battel of the enemy, that they were taken priſoners: yet notwithſtanding their adverſe fortunes, they got their liberties once again, and made Charles K. of France, with honour and joy, to the deſtruction of Hauſray & Henry, theſe notable traitors: yet was not this fierce, long, & tedious battel ended, for they ſtood it out manfully on either ſide. Valentine being careleſs of life, at laſt met with Brandiffer, who encountered each other ſo fiercely, that both fell to the earth: but Valentine ſuddenly recovering himſelf, gave the K. ſuch a blow, that he clave his head. K. Brunnant ſeeing his brother ſlain, departed out of the field with the admiral of Cordes, & K. Joſreh, who cauſed a retreat to be ſounded: the

Christians following, slew many thousands, & others leapt into the sea, & drowned themselves. So the night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City: next morning in burying the dead, there was great lamentation for the Emperor of Greece. Then his body was royally interred in the City of Angory, but Valentine could not be comforted.

The Pagans being thus twice put to the worse before Angory D. Myllon took his leave of Valentine, to return into France, saying: Valentine, I would I could return as swiftly back, as you brought me hither. Friend (said Valentine) I would I had never known the art, for it hath brought nothing but shame & veration on me, & him an untimely death, that taught it me: so the D. Myllon departed. Valentine & Orson intended to go for Greece; but before their departeur, they crowned the Queen Kt. K. of Angory. After leave taken, Orson called the fair Galazy unto him; and said, Love, I know you are with-child by me, yet I cannot wed you, for that I have another wife; but before I go, I will make certain Lands over unto you, for your maintenance, that you may hereafter live of your self, without the help of any other. All these offers she denyed, but said, she would go to Sea with him; & after confine me to some Religious House, wherein I may spend the residue of my days. Agreed (qd. Orson,) & so he took her with him to Constantinople. Being come thither, they sent word to the Empress of their father's death, but concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was sorrowful for her Husband, but joyed at the sight of her Children, so did all the City likewise: making great triumphs throughout the same. The Empress being on a certain time at dinner, said unto her sons: it must be agreed betwixt you, who shall be Emperor. Orson replyed, It appertaineth not to me to take the first place: Brother, let it be as I say, for I am beholding to you, you nothing to me: therefore take the Empire, and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should joyntly govern, but Valentine continued not long in that state of dignity; for shortly after, on a morning, he called to him Clerimond, & said thus unto her: Understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, & my conscience remaineth still troubled for the fact, & I am therefore minded to go on Pilgrimage. Commend me to my mother, & my brother Orson, both which I charge you not to see, till fifteen days be passed over, and then give them this Letter: all which the Lady must consent unto, although in tears.

CHAP.

CHAP. LI.

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how King *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his wife, and how he betrayed *Orſon* and the Green Knight: and how *Galeran* delivered his Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made; How *Bellyſant* and *Clerimond* came to know of King *Hugon's* treaſon, and how *Galeran* loſt his head, an how *Orſon* and the Green Knight were ſet free.

THen Valentine ſaid, Lady, ceaſe your teares, & give me your wedding-Ring: ſhe having done ſo, he brake it in two pieces, keping the one half, & giving her the other: ſaying, My Love, keep thy half, & whatſoever you hear believe nothing, till you ſee thisother half, which

I poſſeſs. At theſe words he imbraced her, & wept bitterly, & ſo departed, only one Page with him. Having long travelled, at laſt he came to Rome, there coming into the preſence of an Hermit, he confeſſed the death of his father: the Hermit ſeing him ſo penitent, enjoyned him penance. Firſt change thy habit, & go barely cloathed, and 7 years lye under the ſtairs of thy Palace, without ſpeaking any words, thou ſhalt neither

neither eat nor drink, but of the scraps that come from thine own Table; do this, and fear not thy sins. Sir, said Valentine, all this I will do: so after he had dined, he departed, without speaking to his servant: after this, Valentine entered into a Wood, feeding upon Roots, and he continued there so long, that he was forgotten amongst men.

Orson having now read the Letter that Clerimond delivered him, wept bitterly, insomuch as the Lady said unto him: Brother, cease your lament. Alas, said Orson, I have great cause, for this Letter sheweth, that my Brother will never return. He reat the Lady swounded, & recovering her self, she said, why hath my Love hidden his intent from me? but all her sorrow could not call him home again. Tydings was spread through the City, that Valentine would never return: Clerimond wailed, Bellysant complained, & Orson sighed. Now (as the story saith) the Lady Fezon hearing that Orson had got another Lady with-child, she dyed with grief. Being dead, Orson made a years solemnity of her Funeral, and after married Galazy, of whom you have heard before.

Now I shall shew you how Valentine came back to Constantinople in beggerly weeds, insomuch that he was not known, going from house to house a begging. At last he went into his Brothers Palace about supper time, & those that waited on the table beat him away: Orson seeing them so churlish, bad them let him alone, for I am willing that all poor men should be releived for my Brother Valentines sake, that so we may hear tydings of him. After this, they brought him meat & wine, but he espying a basket wherein the scraps were put, eat thereof, which amazed the beholders: night being come, the servitors asked Orson if he would let that counterfeit bide in his Palace. I (qd. Orson) for it may be for some vow which he hath made. Thus abode Valentine, and made his bed under the stairs, of straw. On the morrow, Orson passing by, gave him mony; after came his Mother, and his Wife Clerimond, and they gave him mony, saying: How can you endure thus naked, without cloaths? this night you shall have some provided for you. They being gone, he gave his mony to two poor men standing by him, who scoffed him for his labour: next day at dinner, they gave him variety of meats, which he refused, & made signs for the Alms-basket: Orson, to try him yet further, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then said Orson, Surely this is some vow that he hath made unto the Gods. Thus did Valentine remain within the Palace without being known, that all men thought him dead.

In theſe dayes there was a K. of Hungaria, named Hugon, who heard that Valentine had given over the Empire of Greece unto his brother Orſon: this Hugon came to Conſtantinop. & was honourably received. After his arrival he came to the Lady Clerimond, & ſaid, I am K. of Hungaria, & have no wife & for that purpoſe I am come hither to crave your love, I know that Valentine is dead, or elſe that he will never return: wherefore L. grant me thy love, & thou ſhalt be Q. of Hungaria: Sir, (qd. the Lady) I thank you for your Kingly proffer, but to be your wife I cannot; for ſure my Valentine liveth, & for 7 years, I will every day expect his return: beſides, when I make choice of a Husband, my brother Orſon, & the Green Kt. muſt know, for without their leave I will never marry. Then he went towards Orſon, & demanded of him, if he heard any tydings of his brother? Great K. (qd. Orſon) no, I heard that he left me a Letter, the which his wife delivered me, & certified me that he is gone to exile, & beareth about him half the Ring that he was married withal, the other half he left with her, charging her that ſhe believe nothing of him, till ſhe ſee the other half which he poſſeſſed. The Gods be his good ſpæd, (qd. Hugon) for he was a worthy Kt. But one thing, (qd. Hugon) have I more to acquaint you with, I am determined to take a journey to Jeruſalem, to viſit the holy Shrine, ſo you would bear me company. With all my heart (qd. Orſon) but let us go to Angory, & take with us the Green Kt. who is K. thereof. It ſhall be ſo, (qd. Hugon.) So Orſon taking leave of his Mother, & his Wife Galazy, came to Angory, & was received with great joy. Having feaſted there, they took their way to Jeruſalem. Being come into the City (while they were beholding divers Monuments) Hugon ſtole away from them to the K. of Jury; & ſaid: I have a meſſage to deliver worthy your attention. There is newly arrived here, 2 worthy Kts. that are your greateſt enemies, for they ſlew K. Brandiffer, K. Lucar, & your brother, K. of India. When Rabaſtre heard all that he could ſay, he was very ſorry for the death of his brother, & ſaid unto Hugon: Can you deliver me theſe two Kts? yea, (ſaid the traytor) ſo you will give me their golden ſeals: Sir, (qd. he) them and much more will I give you. Then hearken, ſend unto the Patriarks houſe, & he will tell you where they are. The K. preſently ſent out 800 armed men, & found them at dinner, then they took them and brought them unto the K. Falſe enemies (qd. the K.) to our lives & Religion, my heart even leapeth for joy that I have gotten you, tell me what is your names? My name is Orſon, & this is the Green Kt. You

are

are the men I look for, & there is another called Valentine, had I him also, I would use you all alike, then he caused their Seals to be taken away, & given to Hugon, & they to be cast into a dungeon, & fed only with bread & water. Now all this while they knew not what was become of Hugon, for they thought verily he had been slain by the Sarazens, while he was plotting with another traitor in the City, called Galeran, & began thus to salute him; Galeran, my desire is to imploy your secresie in a matter of import, & I will reward thee sufficiently. Uncle (qd. Galeran) fear me not, I know your drift, you would obtain fair Clerimond. True (said Hugon) therefore let us write a Letter in the name of Orson, and we will Seal it with his Seal, & the letter shall be thus framed.

Orson, by the Power of the Gods, Emperor of *Greece*, unto the thrice Renowned Soveraign Lady my Mother, unto you my Love *Galazy*, and my Sister *Clerimond*, greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, requiring nothing but patience; Ladies, know that I have found my Brother *Valentine*, on his death-bed at *Jerusalem*, & a little before his last gasp, he charged me to salute *Clerimond* in his name, and command her, that if ever she marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband: the cause why he sent not the half Ring, was, for that it was stolen from him in his sickness.

This Letter thus finished, Hugon wrote another Letter, saying. Right well-beloved Sister, we have said enough about my Brother *Valentine*, but now we wish you, for the great beauty wherewith you are adorned, first, to accomplish the desire of the dead; secondly, to encrease your honour, we advise you to match with *Hugon*, King of *Hungary*, as you will avoid our displeasure. And for further authority, we have sealed these Letters with our own Seals. Again know, that we cannot yet return, for great wars is fallen between the infidels and Christians. So we leave you to the tuition of the Gods.

These Letters being sealed, Hugon gave them to Galeran, to bear to Constantinople, himself following after: by this means thinking to get the Lady. Galeran being in Constantinople, delivered his letters to the Lady Bellysant, who commanded that he should be highly feasted. Afterward, she called one to read them, & Valentine lying in the Hall, heard the Contents thereof: being read, the Ladies grew exceeding sorrowful for the death of Valentine, but especially the Lady Clerimond. piteously lamenting his misfortunes, saying: How unhappy amongst

Women

woman am I? Alas Valentine, why went I not with thee, to fer thy body laid up safe in the earth? unkind Brother, & the Green Kt. why are you two such enemies, as to wish me to marriage so soon after Valentines death, seeing I have lost such a noble, magnanimons, & loving Kt. the mirror of Chivalry, the rose of honour, the example of courtesie & the patron of truth? Death, hast thou not one dart left to shoot at this poor breast? for seeing my life is nothing but sorrow, I will never have other Husband but in sorrow will I spend the rest of my days. All this did Valentine behold, which he pittied, but fearing to be known, he buried it in silence. Bellysant seeing Clerimond thus violent, said: Daughter, be patient, he was my Son, & I sorrow for him at my heart, but when I consider he cannot be fetched back therewith, I pass it over, & rather think on what your Brother, and my Son Orson doth advise you unto. Good Mother (qd. the Lady) say no more, for I shall never marry, & therewith went weeping to her Chamber, & Valentine he lay under the stairs, musing how these treasons should come about. Some four days after, K. Hugon came to Constantinople, and was received with great honour, but Clerimond shewed him no favour. Being there he said unto the Empress: You understand of the death of your Son, for whom I am sorry: but it is agreed upon that I shall marry the Lady. Sir, (qd. Clerimond) I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: All this treason Valentine heard. But in the end, the matter was so urged, that Hugon had the Lady, which much encreased his joys, but they were short

Valentine having ended his Orisons to the Gods, the Oracle made answer to him thus: Valentine get thee out of the City, and without the gates is a Pilgrim put on his Weeds, having them on, get thee to thy Palace & there before all comers reveal the treason practised against thy love, for in this disguise thou canst not be known. Valentine coming to the court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladies, and amongst them was the traitor Hugon, even he that uttered such reproachful Words against Clerimond: Now Valentine came to Bellysant saying: Lady, I beseech you shew me the wife of Valentine: whereat Hugon blushing, replyed: Pilgrim, get thee gone into the Kitchin, for this is no place for thee. Sir, said Valentine I would fain do a message to her: wouldst thou, said the Lady, I am she that thou desirest to see: then thus, I have lately seen your Love Valentine, that by me sendeth salutations, willing me to say, that within 3 days he will be with you. Pilgrim (qd. the Lady) advise well thy self what thou speakest for I heard my Love is dead. Lady (qd. the Pilgrim) believe it not, for I protest to deliver my body to death, if it be not true as I have said: Hugon hearing these Words related to the Ladies, secretly mounted his horse, & never returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were much amazed at the Pilgrims tale & offered to seast him, but he would not, only he said to them: Ladies, pardon

me, I pray, for I have certain companions in the town, which I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: yet Clermond would gratifie him so, his news, giving him money, which he honnikully bestow'd again upon the servants. Presently after it was demanded what was become of B. Hugon, a damsel standing by, said: I saw him now take horse, but where he is I know not.

Upon these words Galeran came in, & they asked him what was become of his Uncle Hugon? who making no reply, nelysant grew inraged, & said: You shall not escape till you have revealed the treason Hugon hath practised against us. Then Galeran said: Lady, have mercy on me, & I shall tell you all. Say on, I pardon thee. My Uncle is guilty of treason, & has sold to the Pagans, & Emperor Orson, & the Green Kt. which take sore daunted the assembly, but Galeran was presently hanged. Then Valentine leaving the habit of a Pilgrim, return'd again to the Pallace. Clermond espying him, said: poor man, where have you been, methinks you seem displeased because I said I will not marry. Valentine reply'd not at all, but left her, yet she, not so contented at his dejection, caused a costly quilt to be brought for him to lodg upon, but he refused.

B. Jury having Orson & the Green Kt. in hold, caused them to be brought before him, & said unto them: Lords, you see you are at my mercy, wherefore I vow you shall never escape with life, except you resign back unto me the City of Angory. Orson reply'd, we will never consent hereunto, except thou give B. Hugon unto us: the B. said unto them: speak not of him, for he is the traitor that delivered you into my hands, & he hath your seals. Orson & the Green Kt. marvelled much thereat, & swore they would be revenged on him.

Now it fell out that these prisoners were content to yield to the Kings command, & so returned to Constantinople: being come home, Clermond told him, that she had heard tydings of Valentine, which resorted Orson, who living with his wife that night, got a son call'd Moran, who after ruled Angory. Not long after Orson rais'd an hoast of men to go for Angory; which when Orson heard, he offered him the same City, & 4 horse load of gold: & if any there durst call him traitor, (Orson excepted) he would fight with him; the Green Kt. accepted his challenge; so arming themselves, the Green Kt. came first into the Lists. All things set in order, they encountred each other with their spears, next with their swords at last the green Kt. gave Hugon such a stroak on his helm, that he cut part of his head even off at his shoulders, so that he fell into a swound. Thus was the green Kt. conqueror, Hugon reviving again, declared a confessor, & unfolding the treason, dy'd in the place. Orson nevertheless, caused his body to be sumptuously interred. At last Hugons treason being blown abroad, they rendred the City to

to the Emperor Orſon. This being ended, they returned into Conſtantinople. But Clerimond marvelled he heard not of Valentine.

CHAP LII.

How at the end of ſeven years, Valentine dyed in the Pallace of Conſtantinople: and how Orſon turned hermet.

AT the end of 7 years Valentine fell into a mortal diſeaſe, whereof he dyed. Before his death an Angel appeared to him ſaying: Valentine, thy glaſs is run, for within four hours thou ſhalt dye: whereat he greatly rejoyced making ſigns for pen, ink, and paper, when he had it, he wrote that it was himſelf that appeared like a Pilgrim & diſcovered the treaſon. After putting to it his name, he cloſed up the paper, putting in the other half of the Ring that he had kept: ſhortly after he laid him down & dyed. When Orſon ſaw that he was dead, he was troubled in mind. The poor man being dead, held a letter in his hand; which Orſon would have taken out, but could not: then came Clerimond, & as ſoon as he laid hold thereon, the hand opened it ſelf. Clerimond breaking up the Letter & knowing the half Ring, ſaid: Lords, we ſhall ſhortly hear news of Valentine: So a Secretary was called to read it: at the reading hereof great lamentation was made, but eſpecially by Clerimond, who falling on the dead body, ſaid: Alas I have loſt all my joy, comfort & hopes, for that my Love ſhould dye ſo near my perſon, & I know not of it. Now great preparations were made for his Funeral Rites, he was interred in great magnificence in Conſtantinople. Clerimond afterward betook her to a ſingle life. Thus having ſhown the death of Valentine, & what became of Clerimond: Let us return to Orſon who ruled the Empire of Conſtantinople ſeven years, and by his ſecond Wife Galazy, he had a Son named Morant who after was King of Angory.

After 7 years were expired, Galazy dyed: for whom Orſon was exceeding ſorrowful & in the end betook him to the Woods feeding on Graſs & Roots. It happened one night that he ſaw a viſion: it ſeemed to him more glorious than his tongue could utter. After this Viſion he awaked, & being aſtonied hereat; with tears he came to the Green Knight & ſaid Sir I ſee the uncertainty of the World, for which I am willing to reſign my eſtate & children unto you: ſee them well educated, that they may be fit to govern ſuch a People, for I will ſpend the reſt of my days in ſolitary contemplation: When the Green Kt. had heard theſe words he wept bitterly. But Orſon recomforted him, ſaying: Weep not, but pray for me as I for you that you may accompliſh that which I put you in truſt withal. So taking his way towards a Wood, he there ſpent the remainer of his days: the Green Kt. after ſo governed his children that they carefully ſpent their time on earth & followed their Father to his grave.

FINIS.

The

HOw K. *Pepin* baniſhed Q. *Bertha*, and how he gave his Siſter *Belliſant* in marriage to *Alexander* the Emperour of *Conſtantinople*. *Chap.* 1.

How the Arch-prieſt of *Conſtantinople* betrayed the Emperor his Lord and maſter, in making love to the Empreſs, and what evil followed thereupon. *chap.* 2.

How the Arch-Prieſt having received this repulſe at the hands of *Belliſant*, to ſave his own honour, practiſed Treaſon againſt the innocent Lady. *chap.* 3.

How the Arch-Prieſt put on him the habit of a Knight at arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empreſs *Belliſant*, who was lately baniſhed. *chap* 4.

How *Belliſant* in her baniſhment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whoſe names were *Valentine* and *Orſon*, and how ſhe loſt them. *chap.* 5.

Of the Bear that bare away one of the L. *Belliſants* children. *c.*6.

How by the counſel of the Arch-prieſt, new Cuſtoms and Taxations were raiſed through the City of *Conſtantinople*, and how the Treaſon came to light. *chap.*7.

How the Emperor by the counſel of his Nobility, ſent for King *Pepin* to ſee the combate fought between the Arch-Prieſt and the *Merchant*. *chap.* 8.

How the *Merchant* and the High-prieſt encountred at the place appointed about the clearing of *Bellyſant*, and what a glorious victory did betide the *Merchant*. *chap.* 9.

How K. *Pepin* returned from *Conſtantinople* into *France*, and after ſailed to *Rome*, to fight againſt the Sarazens that had ſurprized that City. *chap.* 10.

How K. *Pepin* beſieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* juſted with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and ſlew him, whereby the City was won again from the *Sarazens*. *chap.* 11.

How *Hauſray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King did ſhew towards *Valentine*. *chap.* 12.

How *Valentine* conquered his Brother *Orſon* in the Forreſt of *Orleance*. *chap.* 13.

How *Valentine* having conquered *Orſon* the wild-man, went from the Forreſt to *Orleance*, whereas K. *Pepin* was reſident. *chap.* 14.

How *Hauſray* and *Henry* took counſel together, to murther *Valentine* in the Chamber of *Eglantine*. *chap.* 15.

How

How Duke *Savary* ſent unto K. *Pipin* for aid againſt the Green *Kt.* who would have his daughter in marriage againſt his will. *ch.* 16.
How divers *Knights* arrived at *Aquitain*, at a ſolemn Juſt there holden, to bear away the love of the beautious Lady *Fezon*. *ch.* 17.
How *Haufray* & *Henry*, accompanied with a troop of their confederates, lay in ambuſh to take away the life of *Valentine*. *ch.* 18.
How *Orſon* & *Grygar* fought together, how *Orſon* returned victor, and cauſed *Grygar* to confeſs the Treaſon, who was after hanged, and *Valentine* delivered from the Dungeon. *ch.* 19.
How *Grygar* being vanquiſhed by *Orſon*, confeſſed his Treaſon to K. *Pepin*, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* had been the only plotters thereof againſt the worthy *Valentine*. *ch.* 20.
How *Orſon* conquered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: alſo, how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him. *ch.* 21.
How *Valentine* took good advice, and ſent *Orſon* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, and how *Orſon* overcame him. *ch.* 22.
Orſon having conquered the Green Kt. *Valentine* cauſed him to be Chriſtened, and ſending him to K. *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and mother, by means of the Green Knight. *ch.* 23.
How the ſame night that *Orſon* was made ſure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge ſhe gave unto him. *ch.* 24.
How K. *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orſon* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*: and how the Green Knight ſubmitted himſelf, according to his promiſe made unto *Valentine*. *ch.* 25.
How K. *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to bear theſe tydings, and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Souldan, who had beſeagured *Conſtantinople*. *ch.* 26.
How the Green Knight Juſted againſt the two Sarazens, and having ſlain one, the other fled: and how *K. Pepin* and his Hoſt were lodged within *Conſtantinople*. *ch.* 27.
How *Valentine* and *Orſon* arrived at the ſtrong Caſtle, where fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen-head they had knowledge of their Parents. *ch.* 28.
How (when as *Valentine* was before the Caſtle, talking with the Guard)

Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*. And how he justed for the entrance, and overcame the Seneschal. *ch.*29.
How *Valentine* shewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen head, which told him from whence he was descended. *ch.*30.
How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*, by the names of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter. *ch.*31.
How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugal*, to see the Lady *Bellisant*, *Valentines* Mother, and of his returning back, and the news that he brought. *ch.*32.
How *Valentine* and *Orson* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how he committed them to prison, with their woful lamentation. *ch.*33.
How *Pacolet* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies. *ch.*34.
How by Art, *Pacolet* set free *Valentine* and *Orson*, from the prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the fair *Clerimond*. *ch.*35.
How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus*, and sailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*. *ch.*36.
How King *Ferragus* assembled all his Men of War to take revenge upon *Valentine* and his Sister *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitain*. *ch.*37.
How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken prisoner in the battel by *Ferragus*, and how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*. *ch.*38
How *Orson* tryed the Constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he Married her. *ch.*39.
How *Ferragus* the Gyant strengthned his Forces by the aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimain*. *ch.*40.
Of the pittiful Tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son, before his farewel to *Constantinople*, and what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle. *ch.*41.
How *Valentine* and the Green Kt. were taken Prisoners in the battel of *Constantinople*, by the Souldan *Moradin* and his men. *ch.*42.
How *Pacolet* by Enchantment, delivered *Val.* & the Green Kt. out of the bondage of the Soldan, & how *Pac.* cozened the Soldan when he had him upon his horse, & instead of carrying him to *Portugal*, brought him into *Constant.* where he was hanged. *ch.*43

How

How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to succour *Ferragus*, and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*, and how the King of *Inde* caused King *Trompart's* head to be struck off; and how he would have married with *Clerimond*; and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the shape of a Woman: and how *Ferragus* was slain, and how *Orson* and the D. went with their Army to *Constant.* to succour the *Emperor*: & how *Orson* led along with him his Mother: & how all the *Pagans* were slain before *Constant.* and how the *Emperor* received his Son *Orson*, and his Wife *Bellysant* with joy. *ch.* 44

How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused *Orson* falsly of Treason, and how the Knife was found in the Kings Bed. And how *Orson* claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the *Dragon*, & how *Valentine* after the conquest of the *Dragon*, caused the K. of *Antioch* and all his Land to be Baptized, & of the lawless love of the Queen *Rosamond*, &c. *ch.* 45.

How *Clerimond* after the year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of *Inde*: And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the King of *Inde*; and how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy* wedded *Rozamond* the fair Daughter of *Brandiffer*; and how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breathe out Defiance, and of the Answer he brought from the *Indian* King; and how *Rozamond* found away to be taken and led unto the *Indian* King; and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against King *Pepin*, &c. *ch.* 46.

How *Valentine* returned back to *India*, after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of King *Murgalant*, and how he heard tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian* King, and left *Brandiffer* in Prison. And how King *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian*, to be drawn to death at horses Tails, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his Hoast, and went to *Angory*, and of the Vision of K. *Pepin*, and how he went into the Holy-land with the 12 Peers of

of *France*, & what hapned. And how *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed their Father, King *Pepin*, and the 12 Peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas* made truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar*, and *Brandiffer*. And *Haufray*, to further his Treason, came before *Lucar* & *Brandiffer*, & how he was *intrapped in his own net*. *Ch.* 47.

How *Valentine* & *Pacolet* came *before the Caſtle*, & how *Pacolet* raiſed up the *Devil*, to ask his *counſel about* the *taking* of the *Caſtle*. And how *Brandiff.* brought the 12 *Peers* of *France into his ſtrong Caſtle*, & *impriſoned them*. And how he beſieged *the City of Angery*. And *how Brandiff. having knowledge that L. was captive in Angery, made means to Valentine to deliver him upon ſufficient* Ranſom. *Ch.* 48.

How *Myllon Dangler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of Priſon in lieu of King *Lucar*: and how *Valentine* and the Duke of *Myllon* iſſued out of the City of *Angory*, and won the Battel from the Sarazens: and how King *Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *Indies* Marſhal, and left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to ſuccour his Wife. *Ch.* 49.

How *Valentine*, under the ſhape of a Phyſitian, went into *India* to ſee & ſpeak with the fair *Clerimond*: And how *Valentine* rode away with her. And how the *K.* of *Brittain* was given to K. *Pepin* by treaſon. And how *Valentine* took the ſtrong Caſtle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, & all the reſt of the Priſoners: And how the Emperor, *Orſon*, and the Green Kt. kept a ſtrong Garriſon in his Caſtle, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* compaſſed the Death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orſon* and the Green Kt. left the Caſtle, and came to the ſuccour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the Chriſtians iſſued out of the City of *Angory*, and bid battel to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly ſlew his own Father; and how *Myllon Dangler* returned into *France*, & *Valentine* & *Orſon* into *Greece*. *Ch.* 50.

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his *Pilgrimage*, and how King *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his wife, and how he betrayed *Orſon* and the Green Kt. and how *Galeran* delivered his Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made: how *Bellyſant* and *Clerimond* came to know of King *Hugon*'s Treaſon: and how *Galeran* was hanged; and how *Orſon* and the Green Knight were ſet free. *ch.* 51.

How at the end of 7 years, *Valentine* died in the paſſage of *conſtantinople*, and how *Orſon* turned Hermet. *ch.* 52.

FINIS.